RouterOS by Example

Understanding MikroTik RouterOS Through Real Life Application

STEPHEN R.W. DISCHER

RouterOS by Example

Understanding MikroTik RouterOS Through Real Life Applications

Stephen R.W. Discher

Editor: Bruce Pinnell Cover Design: Enrique Gonzales Illustrator: Phillip Crawford

Copyright © 2011 by Stephen R.W. Discher. All rights reserved.

This book or any portion thereof may not be reproduced or used in any manner whatsoever without the express written permission of the author except for the use of brief quotations in a book review.

Printed in the United States of America, first printing, 2011.

ISBN 978-0-615-54704-6

Stephen R.W. Discher LearnMikroTik.com 10770 State Highway 30 Suite 200 College Station, Texas 77845



Table of Contents

Acknowledgement

INTRODUCTION

Who or What is MikroTik?

About The Author

What is RouterOS?

<u>RouterBOARD – The MikroTik Hardware Platform</u>

RouterBOARD Product Designations

About This Book

Chapter 1 -- First Time Access

<u>WinBox</u>

Navigating WinBox

Inside WinBox

Safe Mode

Example – Entering Safe Mode

<u>Command Line Terminal Options</u>

Telnet and SSH

Serial Terminal

Example-- Forgotten Password

Creating the Basic Configuration

Interfaces

Example – Add an IP Address

<u>Chapter 2 – User Management</u>

Example -- User and Group Assignments and Policy

<u>Chapter 3 – Upgrading and Downgrading the Operating System, Package Management</u>

Example – Upgrading the Operating System

Example – Downgrading the Operating System

Example – Upgrading using FTP

Example – Adding a Package

Example – Best Practice for Package Management

<u>Chapter 4 – Router Identity</u>

Example – Setting the System Identity

<u>Chapter 5 – System Time and the NTP Protocol</u>

NTP Client Setup

Example – Setting Up the NTP Client

System Clock

Example – Setting the System Clock Manually and Setting the Time Zone

Advanced NTP Server Setup

Example – Enabling NTP Server

<u>Chapter 6 – Backups</u>

Example – Creating a Binary Backup

Example – Restoring a Binary Backup

Text Based Backups

Example – Creating a Text Export (text backup)

Example – Importing a Text Backup

<u>Chapter 7 – Licensing</u>

Example – Determining Your License Level

Example – Install a License

<u>Chapter 8 – Firewalls</u>

Connections

Two Ways To Control Access

Forward Chain

Address Lists

Example – The Basic Firewall

Chapter 9 – NAT, Network Address Translation

Source NAT

Destination NAT

Special Types of NAT Rules

Source NAT With Multiple Public IP Addresses

Destination NAT with Action Redirect

Example – A Simple Masquerade Rule

<u>Example – Destination NAT for a Web Server on the Private Network with Port</u> <u>Translation</u>

Example – Source NAT to Source Traffic From a Certain IP Address

Example – Destination NAT with the Action Redirect

Service Ports -- NAT Helpers

Connection Tracking (on and off)

Example – Disable Connection Tracking

<u>Tools – Torch</u>

Example – Determining the Source of Traffic on a Network

Chapter 10 -- Bandwidth Limits

Simple Queues

Bursting

Example – Creating a Simple Queue for Computers in an Office Network

Example – Creating a Queue for a Destination Host

Example – Create a Queue for Local Computers with Burst

Packet Mangling

Example – Packet Mangling Using Optimal Mangle

Traffic Prioritization

For Further Study: QOS

Example – Queue Priority for VoIP Traffic

PCQ – Per Connection Queuing

Example – Using PCQ with a Simple Queue, One Limit to All

<u>Chapter 11 – Tools</u>

Bandwidth Test Utility

Example -- Bandwidth Test Utility

Monitoring Tools

Example – Using Torch to Troubleshoot "Slow" Networks

Traffic Graphing

Example – Configure a Graph for all Users in a Subnet

SNMP – Simple Network Management Protocol

Chapter 12 – Local Area Networks

<u>ARP</u>

Example – Create a LAN that Requires Static ARP

DNS

Example – Configure DNS Client and Caching DNS Server

DHCP – Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol

DHCP Client

Example – Add a DHCP Client

DHCP Server

Example – Create a DHCP Server

Example – DHCP Static Leases

Example – DHCP Server Without an IP Pool

HotSpot – Instant Public Internet

Example – Set up HotSpot

Example – Create IP Bindings

Example – Create additional Users

Example – User Profiles

Example – Server Profiles

Example – Walled Garden

Example – Creating a Custom Login Page

Web Proxy

Example – Configuring a Transparent Web Proxy

Example – HTTP Firewall, Allowing or Blocking Certain Sites

Example – Redirect Users to Certain Sites

Example – Logging Web Traffic

<u>Example – Logging to a Remote Syslog Server</u>

<u>Chapter 13 – Storage</u>

System Stores

<u>Example – Explore Stores</u>

Example – Create a Store

<u>Chapter 14 – More RouterOS Tools</u>

Email Tool

Example – Configure the Email Tool

Example – Use a Script With the Email Tool and Scheduler to Create and Send a Backup

Netwatch

Example – Reboot the Router Using Netwatch

Ping

Traceroute

Profile

<u>Chapter 15 – Wireless</u>

Wireless Theory

<u>802.11b</u>

<u>802.11g</u>

<u>802.11n</u>

Channelization – 2.4 GHz 802.11b/g/n

Small Channels

Bridged Versus Routed Access Points and Stations

Routed

Bridged

Configure an Access Point (PtMP) With DHCP Server

Example -- Initial Wireless Interface Configuration

Wireless Security

Controlling Access with MAC Lists

Example – Create an Access List on an AP

Example – Create a Connect List on a Station

Example -- Encryption Using WEP

Example - Encryption Using WPA(2)

Example -- IP Addressing, DNS, Masquerade

Example – Configure a Wireless Interface to be a Routed Station (client)

Example – Create a Virtual AP

Bridging – Point to Point or Point to Multi--Point

Example – Transparently Bridging a Link

Point to Point Links

Example – Pseudobridge Modes

Wireless Mode Station--Pseudobridge

Wireless Mode Station--Pseudobridge--Clone

Example – Bridge a Station Using Pseudobridge

Supporting Mixed Clients, Routed Stations and Bridged Stations

WDS, Wireless Distribution System

Example – Build a WDS System

NV2-- Nstreme Version Two

Example – Converting an 802.11n PtMP System to NV2

Example – Hiding the SSID

<u>Chapter 16 – Routing</u>

Simple Static Routes

Most Specific Route

Default Routes

Example -- Tying it All Together With Static Routes

Route Distance

Dynamic Routes

Routing Flags

OSPF – A Dynamic Routing Protocol

Link State Protocol

<u>Areas</u>

Configuring OSPF

<u>Example – Add a Static Route</u>

Example – Add a Default Route

Example – Set up OSPF, the Basics

<u>Chapter 17 – VPN Tunnels</u>

<u>General</u>

Point to Point Addressing

<u>PPPoE – Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet, Applying PTP Addressing</u>

Example -- IP Pools

Example -- PPP Profiles

Example – Create a PPPoE Server

Example – Create a User (Secret)

Example – Create a Client Profile

Example – Create a PPPoE Client

<u>PPTP and L2TP Tunnels</u>

Example – Create a PPTP or L2TP Server

Adding Routes for Tunnels

Tunnels With IP Addresses on Same Subnet as LAN Hosts

Configuring L2TP Server

PPP Status Tab

Bridging Tunnels

Example – Create a Bridged EoIP Tunnel

<u>Example – Create a Transparent VPLS Tunnel</u>

Near End of Tunnel (AP)

Far End of Tunnel (station)

Chapter 18 -- Conclusion

<u>References</u>

<u>Appendix 1</u>

Table of Figures

<u>Index</u>

Acknowledgement

An old mentor of mine, a seasoned U.S. Veteran, a former Air Force fighter pilot, and one of the "Junction Boys" from Texas A&M University has told me time and time again "for every negative there is a positive" and our daily mission is to find it. Fortunately, I have learned that instead of focusing on the negatives in life, I can appreciate the wisdom that comes from a wealth of mistakes, to take daily notice of the unparalleled beauty I see in the world around me and most of all to value the relationships I have with those closest to me, my family, my friends and my co-workers.

Why have I begun with an analysis of positive and negative? Well, I have learned in life that each of us is blessed by our Creator with many things but one of the most important is the people around us, those that touch our lives every day in a large or small way and thereby make it better. Those that live this life with us, the good and the bad, the positive and the negative, the same daily challenges, joys and disappointments you too experience. In writing this book I undoubtedly missed some chances to spend time with my wife, to play ball with my kids, or to have more patience with a co-worker or employee and to each of you that made a sacrifice for me, I say thank you. I know this investment of time did not come without a price and I can truly appreciate your contribution. Now if I follow Dennis' mentoring, I must admit that on the positive side I have learned to appreciate each of you a little more. Again, I say thanks.

Especially to the loves of my life Carolyn, Lauren, Lexie and Drew, thank you for allowing me to do this. I love you all and I am proud you are my family.

INTRODUCTION

You are likely reading this book because you are looking for answers, to questions like "What can this little white plastic box do for me?" or "Why can't I figure out how to configure this particular feature?" Likely you have attempted to read the documentation or a book on the subject but you still have questions. If that is you, then read on.

I too had these types of questions more than 6 years ago when I downloaded my first trial copy of RouterOS. It didn't take long to realize the power I had at my fingertips and quickly learned to appreciate the numerous features this routing system performs to "wow" my clients.

I have always been a "hands on" type of guy. I learn by doing and I teach through examples and have attempted to do that in this book but more on that later. If you too want answers and are ready to enhance your "solutions tool box", then you have picked a winner with MikroTik and RouterOS.

Who or What is MikroTik?

Located in Riga, Latvia, MikroTik was founded in 1995 to develop routers and wireless ISP systems. Latvia is a member of the European Union and is nestled on the Baltic Sea between Estonia and Lithuania. With more than seventy employees at the time of this writing, MikroTik is a growing company with a full-featured router operating system, RouterOS. In 2002, MikroTik entered the hardware manufacturing field with the brand RouterBOARD. RouterBOARD continues to develop new designs, targeting small companies, WISPS (Wireless Internet Service Providers) and wired ISP's (Internet Service Providers) looking for high performance, small footprint and a powerful feature set.

About The Author

Stephen Discher is an entrepreneur and a 1987 graduate of Texas A&M University. He makes his home in College Station, Texas where he lives with his wife and three children. A native of Texas, he has been in the technology field since 1983 when he worked part time as an electrical technician at a company that built offshore cable handling systems while he was attending college.

Upon graduation, he started his first company, Deck Systems & Equipment, designing and building custom equipment for the offshore Geophysical industry. In 1999, he sold the company and began working as a consultant for numerous companies, all in the technology field.

In 1993 he became involved with computers and networking in the telecommunications industry and in 1999 joined as a partner in American Cable Services.

In 2005, he sold his interest in ACS and began working as the Director of Operations for FIBERTOWN, a technology campus and Tier IV data center in Bryan, Texas. Simultaneously, he started Wickson Wireless, a WISP or Wireless Internet Service Provider in Bryan, Texas. During the next few years he earned all of the MikroTik certifications and became a MikroTik Certified Trainer.

In 2010, he left FIBERTOWN to work full time at his WISP, Wickson Wireless and teaching MikroTik classes.

In 2011, he sold Wickson Wireless and today works full time doing MikroTik training with LearnMikroTik.com.

In his spare time, he enjoys flying his 1941 Piper J3 Cub, fly fishing and camping with his family.

What is RouterOS?

In simple terms, RouterOS is routing software that runs on a PC based hardware platform. Whether it's a conventional X86 based PC, a RouterBOARD, embedded device, or a virtual machine, RouterOS is an operating system that will make your device a dedicated router, a bandwidth shaper, a transparent packet filter, or a wireless enabled device. Have an old PC lying around? With RouterOS, it can be converted into a powerful router!

RouterOS can also be installed on a virtual machine, VMware/ESX environment, or parallels if you are using Mac.

RouterBOARD is a hardware platform manufactured by MikroTik. The product can range from a very small home router to a carrier class access concentrator. If you need features and power on a budget, then read on. If you are new to MikroTik or RouterOS, this is going to astound you.

RouterBOARD – The MikroTik Hardware Platform

As previously stated, you don't need a RouterBOARD to run RouterOS; it can be run on any X86 based personal computer, however, the RouterBOARD platform is a cost efficient series of devices specifically designed to be powerful routers. A brief introduction to the product line will help you understand how to pick the correct device for your application.

RouterBOARD Product Designations

RouterBOARDs can be divided into two basic groups: Integrated meaning in a case, ready to use and RouterBOARDs which are bare motherboards ready to accept wireless interfaces and a suitable case.

They are also designated by a product name that is descriptive of the product's physical capabilities.

The line of integrated devices includes the popular RB750 or the RB751U-2HnD.



These are SOHO or small office, home office type routers suitable for use as Internet gateways, firewalls, VPN concentrators or wireless access points.

The model number tells you about the capabilities of a RouterBOARD device. For example, the RB designates it is a RouterBOARD, the 7 designates it is a 700 series device with respect to the base system design, the 5 means 5 Ethernet ports and the 0 in RB750 means there is no provision for wireless interfaces, that is, no integrated wireless cards or mini PCI slots to accept a wireless card.

The RB751U-2HnD on the other hand, is a 700 series RouterBOARD with 1 each, 2 GHz wireless interfaces integrated within including dual chain antennas (designated by the letter D), a USB port (designated by the letter U) and capable of high power operation on 802.11n (which includes 802.11b/g operation as well).

At the top of the RouterBOARD line is the RB1100AH, outfitted with 13 Gigabit ports.



This device is suitable for use as an Internet router or firewall in a large office environment or as the gateway router for an ISP or Internet Service Provider.

If you need more of a custom solution, there is a complete line of RouterBOARDs that will allow you to configure a custom wireless or routing device. These include the 400 series devices as well as the 800 series models and range from small CPE or Customer Premise Equipment devices that cost less than \$50. At the top of the line are the most powerful Gigabit capable boards with room for up to 4 wireless interfaces such as the RB800.



RB411

RB800

These devices can be outfitted with wireless mini PCI cards also built by MikroTik and placed into indoor or outdoor cases.

MikroTik builds several styles of indoor cases for their boards and there are several "Made for MikroTik" manufacturers that build indoor and outdoor cases ranging from rack-mounted cases through outdoor weatherproof cases for wireless access points. The options and combinations are endless allowing a high level of flexibility with this product line. Cost for the bare boards ranges from \$49 through \$350 for the top of the line RB800.

As previously explained, the product descriptor designates the capabilities of the product and at the time of this writing, they are (with minor exception for some legacy products) as follows:

First Digit – Series number such as 4xx, 7xx, 8xx, 11xx, and 12xx.

Second Digit – Designates the number of Ethernet ports, such as 750, which means 5 Ethernet ports.

Letter Designators Following Model Numbers

- A With respect to wireless capable devices, this device comes complete with a Level 4 license so it can be configured as an access point.
- U Designates USB support and at least one USB port.
- AH Designates high power with respect to the CPU and additional RAM memory.
- 2 Following a model number designates 2 GHz operation for the wireless interface.
- 5 Following a model number designates 5 GHz operation for the wireless interface.

- N Following a 2 or 5 designates 802.11n capability.
- H For wireless devices, designates high RF power output.
- G Designates Gigabit capability for the Ethernet ports.
- L Designates low cost.
- D For wireless devices, designates dual chain 802.11n operation.
- P Designates POE or Power over Ethernet output.

As you can see, the product line is extensive with more than 40 boards and interfaces available for a wide range of applications. With the availability of integrated, ready to use off the shelf routers or components to allow you to custom build a device to your specifications, the RouterBOARD product line is both versatile and powerful.

About This Book

I have written this book as a text for my MTCNA or MikroTik Certified Network Associate training classes, which I conduct throughout the United States and abroad. Titled "RouterOS by Example", I have taken the approach that simply describing features is pointless.

This book is not a manual for the operating system and so it does not describe every feature in detail. If you are looking for a feature reference book, MikroTik offers the manual online and free of charge. That material will not be duplicated in this book.

Users need to understand the basic features and associated concepts but without practical examples, they are left unequipped to solve the issues they set out to solve with this great product. I want to give you applications, examples, and recommended practices, and only describe the features you typically need and use. The lesser used features and settings are in the manual, and again it is free.

This book is meant to teach the basics using the subjects in the MTCNA syllabus written by MikroTik. They believe, as well as I do, that the MTCNA program contains all of the features you will need to become proficient at a beginner or intermediate level and my goal in this book is to deliver all of that information to you according to the current syllabus on the date of this writing. I have followed the order of the syllabus as much as possible, but reordered some topics to present them in a more logical progression. I have strived to cover every single topic in the MTCNA syllabus in sufficient detail with examples.

Since the MTCNA is the first certification and considered the basic or foundation certification, I will not cover every single feature or detail available in RouterOS, yet you should receive enough knowledge to use the system in powerful ways and through experience become quite proficient with the most complex setups.

Each bolded section is based on a concept and titled according to the feature that provides the concept. Most sections contain real life applications presented through examples.

The Table of Contents will lead you to both concepts and examples and I have included an Index of Terms in the back of the book. I approach indexes a little differently than some authors. I do not index every occurrence of a word. Instead, I index words based on the page in the book where the concept is best explained. Also included in the book is a Table of

Figures. Screen shots are not included in that table because they are so numerous. Ready to solve problems and reduce your workload? Then read on!

Chapter 1 - First Time Access

Whether you are installing RouterOS on a non-RouterBOARD device or accessing a RouterBOARD with RouterOS already installed, the basic method of access is the same. There are several options to access the operating system and they are WinBox (the GUI, graphical user interface), Webfig (via HTTP and your web browser), and command line via serial, telnet or SSH. Additionally, the RouterOS API provides yet another manner of accessing the device that is far beyond the scope of this book.

WinBox

WinBox is a Microsoft Windows based GUI that is by far the simplest way to configure a RouterOS device. It is extremely powerful and allows configuration of 99% of the feature set. WinBox is a standalone executable, meaning it isn't necessary to install anything on your PC other than to download the program, simply save it to your computer and double click it to start it. If you don't have WinBox already you can download it from MikroTik.com.

The first time you try to connect to your MikroTik device it may or may not have an IP address configured on it. One of the great features of WinBox is the ability to "get in" without an actual IP address but a note of caution here is needed. Access using the MAC address should only be used in order to configure an IP address on the device. It is **not** a reliable way of accessing the router. I hesitate to call it an unreliable method, but it's not the correct method and sometimes you may get unexpected results, i.e., configuration pages that don't properly populate or frequent disconnections. The feature is meant to be used it in an emergency or for first time access to configure an IP address on it and then to go back in using the IP.

With WinBox running, simply click the square button with the three dots to scan the local area network for MikroTik devices.

ionnect To:	00:00:42:28:04:80				Co	aneck
Login	MAC Address	IP Address	(der/l)	Vetaion	Board N.	
Password	00.00:42:16:50:5F 00:0C:42:56:85:42 02:43:F9:96:03:00	10.025177 10.00.254 10.0251	PlashBanch OfficeAP 10770 State Hwy	320 56 56	FI64535 FI9411	. 2

Then, if you click on the MAC address of your device, it will be loaded into the "connect to" line. Conversely, if you click the IP address it will load the IP address into the same line. Clicking the "Connect" button will then connect to the router.

Navigating WinBox

Navigating WinBox is straightforward. On the left side of the screen are "buttons" and clicking them either expands the menu selection provided by the button or it opens a

"window".

Wireless	Wireless Tables	Interface <=lan1>			
Bridge	Interfaces Nstreme Dual 4	General Wireless (VD	G Nistreme Status	Iraffic	CK
Mesh	+ × C	Mode:	ap bridge	-	Cancel
RFF	Name / Type		2.4GHz-B/G	Ŧ	Apply
P (X Wrotent Seite			1.1.1	
IPv6 D		Frequency:	2412	₩ FH2	Enable
MPLS		5580:	abc	-	Connect
MIS		Scan List:		•	1
Rouking h		Security Profile:	default	Ŧ	Terch
Dystem D		Antenna Made:	anterna a		Scan
Oueues				- Casal	Freq. Usage
Ries		Default AP Tx Rate:		▼ bps	Algn
.00		Default Client Tx Rate:		▼ bps	Soff
tadius					
iools ト	1		 Default Authenticati Default Forward 	8	Snooper
daw Terminal	Litem out of 5 (1 selected)		Hide SSID		Reset Configuration
NetaROUTER Naka Supout.rif					Advanced Mode

Buttons can also open sub-menus. In this example, clicking IP and then Addresses opens the Address List window.

Clicking the plus (+) sign allows you to create a new IP address.

IP D	ARP	Address List
IPv6	Accounting	🛨 🗕 🖌 🗶 🗂 🍸
MPLS	Addresses	Address / Network Encedcast Interface 🔻
VPLS	DHCP Clanc	New Address 55 ether1 66.255 ether2
Routing P	DHCP Relay	Address: 192-168-100-1/24 OK
System D	DHCP Server	
Queues	DNS	
Files	Firewall	Broadcast: Apply
Log	Hotspot	Interface: ether1 F Disable
Radius	IPsec	Comment
Tools D	Neighbors	
New Terminal	Packing	Сору
MetaROUTER	Fool	Remove
Maka Supouturf	Routes	disabled
Manual	SNMP	2 items (L selected)

I will use the terms button, sub-menu, and window throughout the book to describe the process of navigating WinBox.

Inside WinBox

Within WinBox, each function or facility has common elements. These elements are:



Adds a new element to the list

Removes an element from the list

Enables an element in the list

- 💌 Disables an element in the list
- Adds a comment to the list element
- Filters the list view

Colors are also used within WinBox to denote certain states of devices or options.

Red – If a rule or option is red, that denotes it is invalid. For instance, a DHCP Server configured on a physical interface will turn red if the interface is removed or added to a bridge, thereby making the server invalid. Another example is a firewall rule that has been created and later the interface is removed. This rule will also turn red.

Blue – If there are two routes to the same destination, the active route will be black and the inactive route will be blue.

Bold – In the wireless interface, the **bold** entries are the standard channels for the regulatory domain that has been selected.

One more feature of WinBox that is well worth mentioning and a source of confusion for many users is the small square box that appears next to several configuration options. This box is often misunderstood to be a "check box" when in reality it is a "not" box. If you look closely at the following illustration, what you will see is that if you click inside the box, it produces an exclamation point instead of a check mark. The purpose of the box is to logically state "not". In this example, this firewall rule does not apply to 192.168.1.1 as a source address for the rule when the box is clicked. So, be careful not to click that box unless you want to use it to mean "not" what is configured in the blank next to it.

Chair	n: cnat
Src. Address	5: 192.168.1.1
Chain:	srcnat
Address:	192.168.1.1

Safe Mode

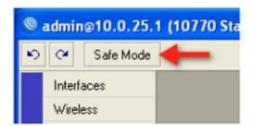
In class I always say "safe mode is your friend", but what is safe mode? Safe mode is a mode where configuration changes are reversible. By this I mean that typically when you apply a change or click OK, the change is immediate and is saved so when the router is rebooted, the configuration is still there.

In safe mode, if you lose your connection to the router, all changes made after entering safe mode are reversed as if they never happened. I recommend using safe mode when first learning RouterOS, however, you must exit safe mode for your changes to be saved. The process is: enter safe mode, make changes, if everything looks ok, exit safe mode. You can then enter it again, make more changes, and so on.

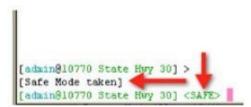
Example – Entering Safe Mode

Safe mode can be entered inside WinBox in version 5 and later or from the command line.

From WinBox, click the button Safe Mode:



Alternative, from the command line, type the key combination ctrl-x. The prompt will change as follows:



To exit safe mode, click the button to un-toggle it or type ctrl-x again.

If you are in safe mode and do not want your changes saved or to lose your ability to access the router, simply click the X to exit WinBox. If you are in a terminal window and still have connectivity to the router, type ctrl-d to exit safe mode and roll back changes.

Command Line Terminal Options

This section is included at this point in the book to keep in concert with the official MikroTik MTCNA course syllabus, however, these concepts are more advanced and you may wish to skip to page 37 and come back here when you are more comfortable with RouterOS or need it as a reference.

Telnet and SSH

Once the device has an IP address configured, telnet and SSH may be used to access the device. Once you are logged into the device, the command line commands parallel the WinBox command sequence for almost every function. In version 5.X there are still a few remaining functions that do not follow the command sequence displayed in WinBox. You will learn these exceptions as you become familiar with the command line.

Serial Terminal

Using a serial cable is the "back door" method to get into the router if all else fails. For example, if you accidentally disabled all of your Ethernet ports you will no longer be able to get in through WinBox, telnet or SSH, so serial is your last option.

If your computer does not have a serial port, you will need to purchase a USB to Serial adapter at any computer store and install the drivers to use serial terminal.

Example- Forgotten Password

If you have forgotten the user name or password (note that there is no password recovery routine), you will need to re-flash the board using NetInstall. Please understand, you will lose your configuration but there is no other way to regain access to the device. There is no password recovery procedure.

Caution: NetInstall will destroy all configuration on the device if you do not check "keep old configuration" and in some cases, depending on the age of the device and the version you are running, may destroy the configuration even if you do check that option. Always make backups and document your passwords whenever possible.

The NetInstall process is accomplished as follows:

Download the NetInstall zip file from www.mikrotik.com and unzip it on your desktop.

Download the RouterOS file (the .npk package) from www.mikrotik.com and save on desktop.

Start your favorite serial terminal program (Hyperterm or Putty work fine).

These settings work with Putty for accessing a RouterBOARD. Putty will be used for purposes of this example. Putty.exe is a freely downloadable SSH/serial terminal client:

Options contr	olling local serial lines	
Configure the serial line		
Speed (baud)	115200	
Data bits	8	
Stop bits	1	
Parity	None	~
Flow control	None	~

Set a static IP on your PC's Ethernet adapter, for example 192.168.1.1 with a netmask of 255.255.255.0.

ieneral	
	med automatically if your network supports a need to ask your network administrator for
Obtain an IP address a	utomatically
V	
• Use the following IP ad	dreca
	dress 192.160.1.1
• Use the following IP ad	

Start NetInstall on the PC. You should see a window like this:

Label	MAC address / M	fedia Status	Software ID:	Help
			Key:	Влаже
			E Keep old configuration	Get key.
			IP address: /	
			Gateway	Flashfig
			Baud rate: -	
Make floppy ackages liets:	Net booting	Install Con	Delete set	rct al Select nor
form C:Unet;				
nom: C:Vnet; Name & routeros-mi	Version	Description	BOARD RB4xx, includes all supported feat	

Click the Net Booting button and configure an IP address to give the board to be flashed on the same subnet as your PC. In this example, use 192.168.1.2 and check the box:



Click OK. Next, power up the board and watch the terminal on Putty. When the screen says "Press any key within 2 seconds to enter setup." press the enter key. Next type the letter "o" then "1" and then "x". Case of the commands is important.

The board should then boot from the NetInstall instance using the bootp protocol. Once booted you should see the router appear in the Router/Drives window:

outers/Drive	\$		
Label	MAC address / Media	Status	
nstreme	00:0C:42:21:F1:E9	Ready	R

Select the version to install in the lower window. If you do not see a version there, try browsing to the .npk file you previously downloaded.

Note: The download page on <u>www.mikrotik.com</u> allows you to pick your hardware platform and the version you want to download, stable or legacy. It also allows you to download the "Combined package" or "All packages". Typically you will want the "Combined package" as it contains the most common packages in a single file. If you need any optional packages, then the "All packages" zip file is your answer.



Click the Install button to install that version. Note: If you are attempting to recover a board for which you do not have the password, do not click the option "keep old configuration" as it will also keep the password, thereby still rendering the board inaccessible.

Note: Netinstall can be used in the manner described above for recovering a board for which the password has been lost or for an initial install on a PXE bootable device, compact flash

drive, hard drive, etc.

Creating the Basic Configuration

Due to the power of this device, even a basic configuration can be daunting. I will walk you through the creation of a basic configuration that will allow you to access this device easily until you are more experienced at configuring it. I will not explain the steps here, and instead will explain them in depth later in the book.

When you first power up the device and connect to it using WinBox as described on page 27, provided the device has not been configured, you will see a window like this:



I recommend you remove the default configuration, and this will allow you to create your own without anything cluttering things up.

Note that you should be accessing the router via the MAC address as previously explained with WinBox. If you are in through the default IP address of 192.168.88.1, you were likely just disconnected when you removed the default configuration so you will need to relaunch WinBox and enter through the MAC address.

At this point you will want to add an IP address or two, DHCP Server and a few other configurations. To assist you, I have developed a script you can simply paste into the router and it will configure everything for you and get you started on the right track. You may download the script from

http://learnmikrotik.com/book/basicconfig/config.txt. The script is a text file so copy it to your clipboard and then in WinBox, click the New Terminal button and inside the terminal window right click with your mouse and select paste and watch the script configure the necessities.

NEEDM NEEDM FREE NEED NEEDM EDM III KREE ROK REFERRE DO NEED EEN EDM III KREEK ROK REFERRE DOO NEED EEM III KREEK REEK REFERRE DOO					Copy Copy Sc Copy Al	1997	
NEXX NEXX FEX NEX NEXX EXX III KXX KXX REFERE NEX EXX EXX III KXX KXX REFERE NEX EXX EXX REF REF 000 NEX EXX FIX REX REFER 000					Faste	-	-
HEN MENN ENN III KIK KOK REKRER 00 HEN EN ENN III KIKK KOK REKRER 000 HEN ENN III KIK KOK REKRER 000	KININ		EDOK		NEX		
MAN AN ANN III KROKK PAR REP. 000 MAN ANN III KROK KROK PAREPAR 000							
NYY NY III KIX KIX PARPAR 000							
	KITT						
KikreTik Router03 5.6 (c) 1999-2011	Rike	oTik	Rout	er03	5.6 (c) 19	99-2011	h

At this point you should have a router with ether1 ready to connect to the Internet provider with the following assumptions:

Ether1 is the WAN port; it will expect DHCP from the provider.

Ether2 is the LAN port; it will give your computer a DHCP address.

If you have a wireless card, it will broadcast 2.4 GHz with the wireless network ID MikroTik. It will also pass out DHCP addresses.

You can connect with a cable to ether2 or wirelessly.

The system clock will be synchronized to NIST, the National Institute of Standards and Technology and the clock will be set to US Central time.

The router will provide basic Internet access, has no admin password, no encryption and no firewall so please understand

there is no security provided! If you do not have Internet access and enjoy typing, you can type the commands on the following page into a terminal window instead of pasting.

/ip address

add address=192.168.1.1/24 disabled=no interface=ether2

add address=192.168.2.1/24 disabled=no interface=wlan1

/ip pool

add name=dhcp_pool1 ranges=192.168.1.2-192.168.1.254

add name=dhcp_pool2 ranges=192.168.2.2-192.168.2.254

/ip dhcp-server

```
add address-pool=dhcp_pool1 \
```

disabled=no interface=ether2 lease-time=3d name=dhcp1

```
add address-pool=dhcp_pool2 \
```

disabled=no interface=wlan1 lease-time=3d name=dhcp2

/ip dhcp-server config

set store-leases-disk=5m

/ip dhcp-server network

```
add address=192.168.1.0/24 dns-server=4.2.2.2 gateway=192.168.1.1
```

```
add address=192.168.2.0/24 dns-server=4.2.2.2 gateway=192.168.2.1
```

/system ntp client

```
set enabled=yes mode=unicast primary-ntp=50.19.122.125
```

/interface wireless

set 0 band=2ghz-b default-authentication=yes disabled=no\

wireless-protocol=802.11 mode=ap-bridge

/ip dhcp-client

add interface=ether1 disabled=no

/ip firewall nat

This basic configuration will get you started learning RouterOS.

Interfaces

Interfaces are the physical ports that allow input and output connections to the router. Interfaces are accessed from the Interfaces button. Interfaces can be renamed by double clicking on the interface name in the Interfaces list window and then setting their Name on the General tab. This will help you identify them physically or logically or assist you with troubleshooting.

I suggest using comments on interfaces rather than renaming them. My reason is that most enclosures are labeled with the same interface name as it appears in RouterOS and keeping them the same makes things simpler.

Example – Add an IP Address

The first step in learning to configure this device is to gain access and configure an IP address. The assumption is made that you understand basic networking and subnetting and accept the fact that for two hosts to communicate on the same local area network or LAN, they must be on the same subnet or they will require the help of a router that has addresses on both subnets.

That being said, to add an IP address to a RouterOS device, it is first necessary to gain access through one of the methods previous described including WinBox through the MAC address, or through the serial terminal as outlined beginning on page 27. If WinBox does not see your router, try a different interface or use the serial terminal method.

1. Begin by clicking the IP button and then Addresses. Click the plus sign to add a new IP address to the desired interface.

16 L	ARP	Address List
3Pv6 P	Accounting	🔹 🗕 🖌 🕱 🗂 🍸 🛛 🖓
MPLS	Addresses	Address / Network Eroadcast Interface 🔻
VPL5	DHCP Clerk	New Address SS ather1 60.235 ether2
Routing D	DHCP Relay	Address: 192.168.100.1/24 OK
System 🗅	DHCP Server	
Queues	DN5	
Files	Firewall	Broedcest: Apply
Log	Hotspot	Interface: ether1 T Disable
Radus	IPsec	Comment
Tools D	Neighbors	
New Terminal	Packing	Сару
MetaROUTER	Pool	Remove
Make Supout of	Routes	dsakad
Manual	SI\MP	2 tems (1 selected)

Note that RouterOS uses CIDR or Classless Inter-Domain Routing or slash notation to determine the subnet and this must be included on the address line. The format for CIDR notation is 192.168.1.1/24 where the /24 determines the subnet.

2. Click ok to save the address.

Chapter 2 – User Management

The title of this chapter is User Management, which should not be confused with UserManager. UserManager is a totally separate package distributed by MikroTik and is basically their implementation of Radius server. User Management is a function within RouterOS and should therefore not be confused with the UserManager optional package.

Users can be created with three different permission levels. By default, there exists a user named admin with permissions of full. By default the admin password is blank. Obviously for security purposes, changing the admin password to something a bit harder to guess than a blank password is prudent, however, you may wish to create several users with various levels of access.

Note: This task can be centralized and the administrative effort of controlling user access can be simplified by using a central authentication mechanism such as Radius or MikroTik's UserManager. More on that on page 45.

In WinBox, users are created by clicking the System button and then the Users menu item. The plus sign will add a user and allow you to set the password. Also selectable is the group and there are three by default. The group "full" has full read and write access to the router while "read" can only view the configuration and "write" can read and write the configuration. These three default example groups provide some demonstration of the granularity with the rights you can give each of them. Don't be confused by the group named "write". The write group isn't substantially different by design, it just has a different set of permissions as created by default. Typically, I recommend you create users with read access for anyone that doesn't need to change the configuration and full access for your trusted admins. Any deviation on this policy should be made on a case-by-case basis.

From the System Button, select Users.

System D	Auto U	pgrade
Queues	Certific	ales
Files	Clock	
Log	Consol	e
Radius	Drivers	
Tools P.	Health	
New Terminal	History	
MetaROUTER	Identity	,
Make Supout nř	LEDs	
Mercurat		
S	Sc	cripts
L.	Sł	nutdown
-P	Sp	ecial Login
8	St	ores
	U	iers 🔶

From the Groups tab, you can double click a group to see their details.



As you can see, there are a lot of possible combinations of group permissions available:

lame: write]	OK
Policies	-	Cancel
✓ local ✓ ssh	✓ teinet	Apply
✓ reboot	✓ read	Comment
✓ write ✓ test	 policy winbox 	Сору
✓ password	veb	Remove
🖌 sniff	✓ sensitive	

Your selections are dependent upon your individual circumstances.

Example - User and Group Assignments and Policy

User creation and group assignment is really simple and self-explanatory so instead of an example, a best practice might be more meaningful and useful.

Here is an example of groups and access rights. You are considering using a consultant to provide network evaluation and possible configuration but don't want him or her to accidently cause an outage in your production network. Before giving anyone the "keys to the kingdom" I recommend creating for him or her a user with read access. This way, they are able to view your entire configuration without actually being able to make changes. Once you are comfortable with their abilities, then you can change their group to full.

For Further Study – UserManager

If you aren't ready to explore an advanced topic, you may skip this section and return to it later.

Imagine you are a network administrator with various levels of technicians and admins. You want a centralized approach to user management and various levels of access to ensure your ability to terminate network access for an employee quickly. The best and most scalable solution to this situation is MikroTik's UserManager.

The installation of UserManager goes beyond the scope of this book and the MTCNA certification but a few instructions here can help steer you in the right direction. First,

UserManager should be installed on a machine that is in a very stable part of your network with reliable power and connectivity so I suggest your NOC or data center as the ideal location. Since it is available as a package for RouterOS, it can be installed on a physical router or a virtual machine running the X86 version of RouterOS, the latter being my first choice. Typically I put my Dude server and my UserManager on the same virtual machine since I run VMware in my data center. (The Dude is MikroTik's network monitoring program and is available for download at no charge on MikroTik's web site.) UserManager creates a large quantity of log files and the availability of the extra disk space a virtual machine can provide is helpful.

Once UserManager is installed and working, you will install a radius client on each router to authenticate from UserManager. Next you will check the box for "Use Radius" under the User's List through the AAA button. I recommend setting the local admin password on the router to something difficult to guess and only known to you or a trusted employee. This local user is always available to log into the device even if the UserManager server is unavailable. Then create users within UserManager for each of your technicians with the appropriate User Group. If a technician is terminated, you simply remove their account in UserManager to disable their access to the entire network.

Obviously there are many steps in-between the portions I have described and the MikroTik Wiki is a great place to go for a step-by-step process to deploy UserManager. Hopefully the pieces I have added here will fill in the remainder of the blanks and ensure a successful solution for centralized user management.

Chapter 3 – Upgrading and Downgrading the Operating System, Package Management

RouterBOARDs come from MikroTik preloaded with RouterOS. MikroTik recommends that you upgrade your board to the latest version of RouterOS before beginning any configuration.

The operating system is in constant development and new features or bug fixes are frequently available, sometimes even monthly. The decision to do an upgrade on a production system on the other hand should be based on some basic logical reasoning such as:

- 1. Is there a feature I want to add to my device that the new OS will provide?
- 2. Is there a security vulnerability this version solves?
- 3. Is there a bug fix this version provides?
- 4. Do I need to upgrade to provide support for some new hardware?

All of these are valid reasons to upgrade your device. As a friend of mine says, "Every problem is the result of a previous solution." and I think that holds true for upgrades. Another one I am sure you have heard is "if it isn't broken don't fix it". I think you get the point here, if the criteria expressed above doesn't apply, leave your router alone. It is doing its job and doesn't need your help, however, if you need to do an upgrade, read on.

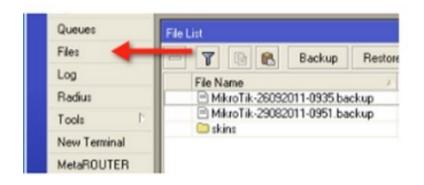
Example – Upgrading the Operating System

1. First, you must download the upgrade package from MikroTik. After web browsing to the MikroTik site, locate the download section and select the platform you want to upgrade. See page 36 if you have any questions about which file to download.

2. Download the .npk package to your desktop. Typically the package you want is the stable version, "combined package". This single file contains the same features that are installed by default on the device.

3. Once the package is downloaded (typically around 12 megs), launch WinBox and access through the device's IP address, not through the MAC address. As stated before, the Layer 3 method is the best for all normal router management.

4. Inside WinBox, click the Files button. This will open the Files List showing all the visible files stored on the router.



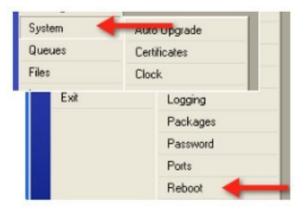
5. Next, drag the package from your desktop to the files window. This can be a bit tedious, depending on how the files are sorted in the files window. Dropping the file inside a folder will prevent the upgrade from taking place so use care to get it at the top of the list. One trick here is to click the Backup button in the Files List. This will produce and save a backup file, which sorts to the top of the list and allows you a little space in which to drop the upgrade package. The npk file doesn't have to be the top file in the list, but make sure it isn't in a folder.

6. Dropping the file in the area identified by the red arrow will produce the desired result:

File List	ore	
File Name	/ Туре	Size
MikroTik-23022011-1032 backup	backup	195.2 Kit
hotspot	directory	0 8
hotspot/alogin.html	.html file	1293 E
hotspot/error.html	.html file	898 E
hotspot/errors.txt	.txt file	3615 B
🗀 hotspot/img	directory	0 8

7. Once the file has completely uploaded, issue a reboot command by clicking System and Reboot.

Note: Pulling the power at this point will not upgrade the router; you must enter a graceful reboot using the reboot command due to the process RouterOS uses to update the device.



After a few minutes, your router will return to operation with the new version installed.

You can confirm in several places, including WinBox and in the System Packages List.

Confirm in WinBox:



And in the Package List:

7	Enable Disa		ible Uninstal		all	Unschedule	Do	wngrade
	Name	1	Versio	n	Bu	ild Time		Scheduled
	@ advance	4.16 4.0beta2 4.16		Dec/20/2010 10:22:51 Jul/15/2010 10:50:13				
	 dude routerboard security system 							
					Dec/20/2010 1	0:23:54	1	
			4.16			Dec/20/2010 1	0:22:57	,
			4.16		Dec/20/2010 10:22:3			7
	🔁 user-man	ager	4.16		1	Dec/20/2010 1	0.23:56	

Once the operating system has been upgraded, it is advisable to update the boot loader. This is done from the command line by clicking the New Terminal button. At the command line type:

system router	board upgrade	

The system will ask for confirmation so answer "y". Then, reboot the system to upgrade the boot loader.

In version 5 and later, this can be done in WinBox by clicking the System button, selecting RouterBOARD, and clicking the Upgrade button.



This two-step process will ensure that both the operating system and the boot loader are compatible versions. Upgrading the boot loader ensures the hardware is best able to communicate with the software and although not required, is recommended. Upgrading the boot loader with an x86 based system is not possible or required.

Example – Downgrading the Operating System

Sometimes it is desired or necessary to downgrade the operating system.

1. This is performed in the same manner as upgrading, however once the older package

has been copied into the Files List, click the System button and select the Packages menu item.

System	Auto Upgrade
Queues	Certificates
Files	Clock
Log	Console
Radius	Drivers
Tools	Health
New Terminal	History
MetaROUTER	Identity
Make Supout.rif	LEDs
Manual	License
Exit	Logging
	Packages 🔶
	Password

2. In the Packages List, select all of the packages and click the Downgrade button.

7	Enable (Disable	Uninstall	Unschedule	Downgrade
	Name	/ Vers	ion B	uild Time	sheduled
	😑 routeros-mips	be 5.6		Aug/02/2011 11:	49.35
	edvanced advanced	Ht. 5.6		Aug/02/2011 11:	46:59
	e dhop	5.6		Aug/02/2011 11:	47:25
	hotspot	5.6		Aug/02/2011 11:	47:58
	10 /pv6				
	elqm 🔁	5.6		Aug/02/2011 11:	47:44
	🔁 ppp	5.6		Aug/02/2011 11:	47:36
	e routerboa	rd 5.6		Aug/02/2011 11:	48:32
	@ routing	5.6		Aug/02/2011 11:	47:38
	@ security	5.6		Aug/02/2011 11:	47:23
	🔁 system	5.6		Aug/02/2011 11:	46.55
	e wireless	5.6		Aug/02/2011 11:	48:21

3. Reboot the router and the operating system will be downgraded.

Note: I do not recommend running different versions of packages unless you know what you are doing. To do so may be possible but can produce unwanted results.

Example – Upgrading using FTP

If WinBox and the simple drag and drop method is not possible, you can use an FTP client to transfer the package to the router and then issue a reboot command.

Example – Adding a Package

Sometimes you find it necessary to add a package not already installed on the router. This may be true for adding a feature like UserManager or if you accidently uninstalled a package that you now need. Packages not included in the combined package may be downloaded as a zip file from the same page on the MikroTik site where you downloaded the upgrade package. To install a single package:

- 1. Download the "all packages" and unzip on your desktop.
- 2. Drag the package to your Files List as you did previously for the system upgrade.
- 3. Reboot the router and the new package will be installed.

Example – Best Practice for Package Management

I recommend uninstalling any packages you do not need or anticipate you will not need in the future. I also recommend disabling any packages you might need in the future but don't need today. This will help secure your system, simplify the configuration and reduce system resources.

I recommend the following packages be the minimum installed and enabled.

7	Enable Dita	ible U	Ininstall Unschedule	Downgrade	Find
	Name	Version	Build Time	Scheduled	
	edenios-mipebe	5.6	Aug/02/2011 11:4	9:35	
	advancedt.	5.6	Aug/02/2011 11:4	6:59	
	@ chop	5.6	6up/02/2011 11:4	7.25	
X	# hotspot	-		8	
×	Ø bv6	-	Typically Optional	3	
×	📾 mols	-	Typicany optional	14	
	@ ppp	5.6		66	
	Biouterboard	5.6	Aug/02/2011 11:4	8:32	
	@ routing	5.6	Aug/02/2011 11:4	7:38	
	@ security	5.6	Aug/02/2011 11:4	7:23	
	😝 oystem	5.6	Aug/02/2011 11:4	6:55	
	@ wireless	56	Aug/02/2011 11:4	8:21	

Chapter 4 – Router Identity

The identity of the router you are logged into is shown in several places in RouterOS. By default, the identity is MikroTik, which is obviously not very useful in your network so it is a good idea to make setting the router identity part of your standard configuration routine. The convention you choose is entirely up to you, but I have found that using the physical address of the client is often helpful to help troubleshoot at a later time. For example, setting the Router Identity to "103 Smith Street" is a good practice.

The router identity is found in several places. In WinBox it appears on the title bar:



In the terminal window at the prompt:

אבאבאנ הינהנונו	XXXX	III	KKK	KKK KKK	RRRF	RR	000	0
MikroTik	Rout	er03	5.6	(c) 19	99-20	11	h	51
historia	now	CLUJ	5.0	10) 13	33-20	**		83
admin@107	70 St	ate f	Eury 30	0] >				

And, in the IP Neighbors List:

eighbors	Discovery	Interfaces		
7				
Interf	ace	/ IP Addess	MAC Address	Identity
A br	idge1	10.0.25.177	00:0C:42:16:90:6E	FlashBench
A br	dge1	192.168.88.1	00.0C 42:A6 FF:D5	MicroTik
A br	dge1	10.0.0.254	00:15:61:10.41:02	OfficeAP
1 00	thus-see	208.91.11.239	00:00:00:00:00:00	10770 State Hwy 30

Example – Setting the System Identity

The system identity is set using the commands System and Identity:

System 1	Contole		
Queues	Drivers		
Files	Health		
	History		
Log	Identity		
Radius	License		
Tools 1		Identity	
New Terminal	Logging		-
111.0	NTP Client	Identity: 10770 State Hwy 30	OK
Make Stroug tr.	NTP Server		Cancel
Make Support if			and the second se
Marca Support in Marcal Exit	Packages		Apply

Chapter 5 – System Time and the NTP Protocol

NTP Client Setup

Having the system time set accurately is important for many purposes, especially logging and troubleshooting. Since RouterBOARDs do not have an onboard battery to keep the clock running, setting up the NTP client should be a part of your standard configuration.

The function of the NTP client is to query an NTP server and get the current time and then set the local clock. The actual displayed time on the RouterBOARD system will be dependent on the local time setting on the device.

Example – Setting Up the NTP Client

The NTP client is part of the default packages so there is no package that needs to be added, simply select System and NTP Client. To have the device query a public Internet time server, set the NTP Client to Enabled, select the Mode as "unicast" and set the Primary NTP Server to a DNS resolvable name or IP address. I suggest "us.pool.ntp.org" for U.S. based systems. Adding a secondary NTP server is optional and you can consider one like time.windows.com.

Using us.pool.ntp.org and simply pool.ntp.org will typically yield two different NTP servers. Once the router is connected to the Internet, the DNS server will resolve the DNS name and then these NTP servers will be queried for the current date and time.

mesn	Clock				
IP E	Console				
System 🕅	Drivers				
Queues		NTP Client			
Files	Health		 Enabled 		
Log	History			1-1	OK
Radius	Identity	Mode:	unicast	₹	Cance
Tools	License	Primary NTP Server:	68.68.18.78	•	Apply
	Logging	Secondary NTP Server:	208.75.88.4		
New Terminal	NTP Client				
Make Supout nif	NTP Server	reached			
Manual					
Manual	Packages	1			ļ

System Clock

Setting up the NTP client will not ensure the local clock is accurate for local time so you must set your time zone on the Clock setting to ensure your clock information is meaningful.

Example – Setting the System Clock Manually and Setting the Time Zone

1. Manually setting the clock is not recommended because every time the router reboots, the time and date settings are lost. The system clock is set under System and Clock:

Mesh IP D System	Clock Console				
Queues	Drivers				
Files	Health	Clock			
Log	History	Time Manual Tin	ne Zone		OK
Radius	Identity	100 million (100 m	16:05:47		
Tools D	License				Cance
New Terminal	Logging	Date	Feb/28/20	100 million (100 million)	Apply
Make Supout rif	NTP Client	Time Zone Name:	manual	Ŧ	
Manual	NTP Server	GMT Offset	+00-00		
Exit	Packages	GMT Driver.	DST A	otiva	
CAR	Password		UT DOT M	une	

2. It is only necessary to select your local time zone from the pull-down list. The DST Active checkbox is a read-only indication of whether the standard settings dictate the current existence of daylight savings time. It is only configurable on the Manual Time Zone tab by setting the beginning and ending dates for daylight savings time.

Time Man	ual Time Zone	DK
Time Zonex	400.00	Cancel
DST Delta	+00.00	Apply
DST Stat	Jan/01/1970.00:00.00	
DST End	Jan/01/1970 00:00:00	

Advanced NTP Server Setup

This process is not needed for a basic setup. If you do not want to use an Internet based time server, or if you simply want to run your own, that is possible by adding the NTP Server optional package found in the package NTP. See Chapter 3 for instructions on Package Management.

Once the NTP package has been added and the router rebooted, the NTP server can be configured.

Example – Enabling NTP Server

- 1. Download the "optional packages" zip file from mikrotik.com.
- 2. Unzip the package on your desktop.
- 3. Drag the NTP package into the files window.

4. Reboot the router. Once the router reboots, click the System button and then NTP Server and enable the NTP server for the protocol of your choice(s). Typically checking "enabled" is the only setting required.

System P	Console	
Oueues	Drivers	
	Health	
Files	History	
Log	Identity	NTP Server
Radius		
Tools D	License	Enabled OK
New Terminal	Logging	Broadcast Cance
Make Supout if	NTP Client	Multicast
Manual	NTP Server	Manycast Apply
Fuit	Packages	

Other routers in your network will now be able to access this router as their NTP server.

Chapter 6 – Backups

I once saw a sign that read, "Blessed is the pessimist for he hath made backups". I could not have said it better myself, as nothing is more difficult than trying to remember a configuration while screaming customers are down. Luckily, creating backups in RouterOS is quite easily done and can be automated as well to provide a high level of disaster recovery preparedness.

In summary, there are two types of backups – binary and text based. A binary backup is not editable, but is simple to produce and easy to restore. A text-based backup on the other hand is editable and can be restored to different hardware platforms by doing some simple editing with your favorite text editor such as Windows Notepad.

So, with two possible backup types, which do you choose? Well, my simple response to that is both. Each has its own unique value and by producing both you have more flexibility when disaster strikes or if you simply need to upgrade a device.

A binary backup is typically simple to restore to a new device if it is exactly the same make and model. For instance, if you are replacing a RouterBOARD 433 board with a new RouterBOARD 433, a binary backup can be restored in seconds with typically one hundred percent accuracy. By accuracy, I mean that every interface will be configured exactly the same as before thereby producing a clone of the original device configuration. That being said, when changing platforms, the result might not be as seamless. For instance, if you restore a backup made on a RouterBOARD 450 to a RouterBOARD 433, the most obvious problem is a difference in the number of interfaces. In this case, the text-based backup makes perfect sense.

Example – Creating a Binary Backup

1. In WinBox click on the Files button.

Switch		
Mesh		
IP	P	
MPLS	D.	
Routing	P	
System	P	
Queues		
Files	-	_
Log		

2. In the Files window click the Backup button.



3. Once the backup file is created it will appear in the Files List. Drag the file from the list to your local drive or desktop for safekeeping. It is also helpful to rename the file to something meaningful to you. For example, "main street access point 11-05-11.backup", or "gold standard AP 11-05-11.backup". It is also a good idea to include the date in all backup file names. If you don't do this, all the backups will start to look alike.

Example – Restoring a Binary Backup

1. Click on the Files button.

Switch		
Mesh		
IP	D.	
MPLS	P	
Routing	P.	
System	P	
Queues		
Files	-	_
Log		

2. If the file is already in the Files List from a previous backup, click to highlight it and then click the Restore button. The router will confirm the reboot. Once rebooted, the backup is restored.

- 🍸 🗈 😤 Backup Rest	ore	
File Name /	Туре	Size
MikroTik-07112011-1021.backup	backup	59.7 Kit
MikroTik-10112011-0906.backup	backup	65.2 Kit
Skins	directory	

3. If the file to be restored is on your local drive, find it on your computer and then drag it to the files window and drop it at the top of the window. Click to highlight it and then click the Restore button. The router will confirm the reboot. Once rebooted, the backup is restored. When a backup is restored, you may need to enable the wireless interfaces.

Tip: Depending on the number and names of the files in your File List, sometimes it is difficult to drop the backup file where you want to drop it and it ends up in a folder

rather than the root directory. A good way to fix this is to create another backup using the process above which will put the fresh backup at the top of your files list and thereby create some space above any folders. Then, simply drag and drop in the new file and this operation is made much easier.

Text Based Backups

My recommendation when restoring a text backup or "export" is to spend some time in your text editor cleaning up the configuration before importing it on the new hardware. In particular, do a word search for the phrase "MAC Address=". I recommend removing all of those configuration segments, thereby making the restoration more universal. If you don't, when the import occurs, those lines will not be imported because the MAC address will not match the original hardware. Simply removing those configuration variables causes the file to load properly and typically without error.

Another use for the text backup is to establish a "gold standard" configuration. A gold standard is a configuration that is used on all of your devices with general configuration options such as NTP client, clock settings, and SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) community strings, to name a few. By configuring a single device with all of the standard options you normally want, you can then product a text export and edit it using a text editor, copying and pasting the appropriate sections into a new text file. Once you have all of your configuration sections, test them on a new device and this file becomes your gold standard.

Example – Creating a Text Export (text backup)

The text export is created from the command line only.

1. Open a terminal window by clicking the New Terminal button.



2. At the root prompt, type export file=[your file name here]. Of course, the square brackets are not actually typed, you should be naming your file in that field.

Example: export file=myconfig. It is not necessary to specify the file extension, it will be added automatically.

Producing the export will take 100% CPU for a few seconds but will then produce a file in the Files List. From there you can drag and drop it to your desktop for renaming and further editing.

You can also omit the "files=" portion of the command and it will export the configuration to the terminal window. From there you can copy and paste parts of the file for use elsewhere.

Also note that the export is produced relative to the portion of the command tree you are in. For example, from the root of the command tree, you will export the entire configuration. By typing IP Address and enter, you will then be inside the IP Address menu branch and an export from there will only produce that portion of your configuration.



Example – Importing a Text Backup

There are several methods of using the text backup you have created and edited. One way is to copy the text to your clipboard and then right click inside a New Terminal window and select paste. This way the commands are executed "real time" so you can watch the effects as they occur. Another method is to import the file from the command line.

1. In WinBox, click the New Terminal button to open a terminal window.

Queues	
Files	
Log	
Radius	
Tools D	
New Terminal	—

2. Drag the file to be imported into the File List root directory.

-	7	쪸	8	Backup	Restore		
	Fie N.	ame			root	Size	
				011-0935 ba	root	53.8 Kji	
	BMil	kroTik	29082	011-0951.ba	ckup I	backup	58.3 Kji
	🛄 ski	ns	-			ectory	
					folder		

3. At the command line type import file=FileName.rsc.

A shortcut here is to type the command less the file name and then hit the tab key to display all importable files. Typing a portion of the file name and hitting the tab key again

will complete the name for you.

```
[admin@DudeServer] > inport file=
MyConfig.rsc addresses.rsc routes.rsc users.rsc
address.rsc route.rsc userman.rsc
[admin@DudeServer] > inport file=
```

Chapter 7 – Licensing

One of the attributes of RouterOS that delivers the most value is the base feature set, which is consistent across the entire license range. While many manufacturers require additional fees to add even standard base features, MikroTik delivers all of the features in all license levels and simply restricts the number of instances. Licenses are included with RouterBOARDs and licensing is typically not an area where you will need to spend much time for basic setups. However, if you need to install RouterOS on a PC or turn a RouterBOARD designed as a client device into an access point, then this information is important.

For example, with a level 3 license, you can construct a point-to-point link with a single client but to add multiple clients in ap-bridge mode, a level 4 license is required. On the other hand, MPLS, an advanced feature, is available across the entire license level spectrum.

The following chart displays the various license levels and their associated features:

Level	0	1	3	4	5	6
Price	no key	reg. required	volume only	\$45	\$95	\$250
Upgrada ble To	-	no upgrades	ROS v5.x	ROS v5.x	ROS v6.x	ROS v6.x
Initial Config Support	-	-	-	15 days	30 days	30 days
Wireless	24h limit	-	-	yes	yes	yes
Wireless Client and Bridge	24h limit	-	yes	yes	yes	yes
Dynamic routing RIP, OSPF, BGP protocols	24h limit		yes(*)	yes	yes	yes
EoIP tunnels	24h limit	1	unlimited	unlimited	unlimited	unlimited
PPPoE tunnels	24h limit	1	200	200	500	unlimited
PPTP tunnels	24h limit	1	200	200	500	unlimited
L2TP tunnels	24h limit	1	200	200	500	unlimited

OVPN tunnels	24h limit	1	200	200	unlimited	unlimited
VLAN interfaces	24h limit	1	unlimited	unlimited	unlimited	unlimited
HotSpot active users	24h limit	1	1	200	500	unlimited
RADIUS client	24h limit	-	yes	yes	yes	yes
Queues	24h limit	1	unlimited	unlimited	unlimited	unlimited
Web proxy	24h limit		yes	yes	yes	yes
Synchr. interfaces	24h limit	-	-	yes	yes	yes
User Sessns.	24h limit	1	10	20	50	unlimited

(*) - BGP is included in License level 3 only for RouterBOARDs, for other devices you need level 4 or above to have BGP.

Some additional things to know about licenses are that they never expire, level 4 and higher licenses include email support for up to 15 days after purchase, can support an unlimited number of interfaces, and they can only be used for one installation.

All RouterBOARDs come complete with a license installed, the level of which is determined by the board's purpose. For example, if the board is intended to be a CPE (customer premise equipment) device, it comes with a level 3 license. Access point or AP boards come with at least a level 4 license and so on.

Licenses cannot be upgraded but they can be purchased and replaced. For example, if you own a device with a level 3 license, you can purchase a level 4 license and install it on the device thereby turning it into an access point. Changing license levels is considered the equivalent of installing a new license, not an upgrade, so you will have to pay the full cost of the level 4 license and not just an upgrade charge.

Licenses can be bought by creating an account at mikrotik.com and entering the software ID as detailed in the examples that follow.

Example – Determining Your License Level

To determine the level of license installed on your device, click on the System button and then

License.

System D	Drivers			
	Health	_		
Queues	History	License		
Files	Identity	Software ID:	C80A-000P	OK
Log	License	Upgradable To:	v7.x	
Radius	Logging		1000 C	Paste Key
Tools D		Levet	5	Import Key
New Terrinal	NTP Client	Features:		Export Key
Make Supoul ril	NTP Server	Expires Inc		Esponney
	Packages			Upgrade/Get New Key
Manual	Password			He day L'arrest Mar
Exit	Ports			Update License Key
	Reboot			

Example – Install a License

1. To obtain a license key, repeat the procedure in the previous example and copy the Software ID to your clipboard. Create an account and log in at Mikrotik.com. Purchase a new key using the Software ID and obtain the new key.

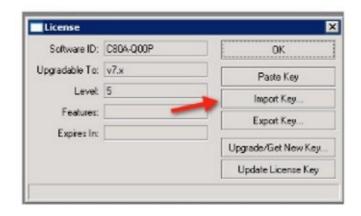
The key will look like this:

BEGIN MIKROTIK SOFTWARE KEY	
K0x0Le060WJ33lguQW2vD8wXydfkteJEdHeawpwbjsme	
TE6KkvmF6gkFg3wl2bzIE/EAW8g0q+kGiTxCUpXJLA==	
END MIKROTIK SOFTWARE KEY	

You can copy the key to your clipboard for installation. You should copy all of the text as follows including "-----BEGIN MIKROTIK SOFTWARE KEY: -------" and "-----END MIKROTIK SOFTWARE KEY------". To paste the key into the router, select System License and click the Paste Key button.

Software ID:	C80A-Q00P	OK
Upgradable To:	ч7.х	Paste Key
Level	5 🜌	Import Key
Features:		Export Key
Expires In:		Upgrade/Get New Key
		Update License Key

2. An alternate method is to use the .key file generated by MikroTik. Click the Import Key button and browse to the .key file to install it.



Note: The Update License Key button is used to update the key to the new format as presented when upgrading from version 3 to version 4 and requires the laptop to have Internet access in order to complete. There is no charge for this update.

Chapter 8 – Firewalls

Where there are options there is power. Where there is power there also can be complexity and therefore creating firewalls with RouterOS is often seen as an area of complexity where users fear to tread. As a result, many either make the decision to forego the firewall and hope for the best or copy firewalls others have created online and thereby never realize the power that a properly created firewall can have and the protection it can offer their network or their network connected devices.

I have often heard it said that the best way to protect a network is to put the hosts inside a vault, lock the door, post a guard and never connect the network to the Internet. Although this is a bit extreme, the concept is basic and understandable; access to a network is the means by which a security breach or attack occurs. Remove the access and you remove the threat. Equally obvious is the fact that our networks need to be connected to the public Internet so there is the application for firewalls.

By definition, firewalls should pass good traffic and block bad traffic. This good and bad traffic is passing either **to** our firewall, **from** our firewall or **through** our firewall. In almost every circumstance, a firewall is also acting as a router which doesn't really add any complexity but is worth contrasting against what is typically termed a "passive" firewall or bridging firewall. In a passive or bridging firewall, the device is inserted into the network as a Layer 2 device meaning it is not routing packets. It typically has an IP address but only for the purpose of administration. Unlike a router, all packets that enter the passive firewall pass out of the firewall unless there are rules that specifically drop those packets. In this book, we will be covering routing firewalls, although passive firewalls are created in a similar manner.

Firewalls need rules to restrict traffic flow and fortunately these rules are organized in chains. The purpose of the chains is to determine at what point in the progression of a packet into or through the firewall a set of rules is applied. The three default chains are input, forward and output. There are also user created chains for organizational and load reducing purposes but they rely on the three default chains. In summary, the user-defined chains do not see traffic or packets unless the packets are sent there by one of the three default chains. I will cover that in detail later in this chapter.

Let's begin with the input chain. The input chain is designed to protect the router itself. Consider the following diagram:

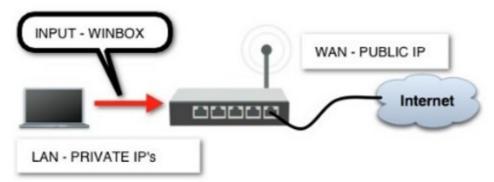


Figure 1 - IP Firewall Input Chain

As you can see, this is a very typical placement of a firewall router at the gateway to the public Internet for a local area network. The Local Area Network or LAN uses private IP addresses, hidden from the public Internet, or WAN, behind the public address on the firewall/router's external or public IP address. Packets coming from the LAN or from the WAN destined for the router itself will pass to the input chain, so that is the logical location for rules to protect the router. This brings up an important detail about the operation of IP networks as it relates to the formation of packets.

I am going to digress from firewalls for a moment and discuss packets. Packets are the messengers of the Internet, very similar to a letter you mail at the post office (but not nearly that slow). Every letter has a "to" address and a "from" or return address. The "to" address tells the post office where the letter should be routed and the "from " address tells them where to return the letter if it can not be delivered. In the same way, packets have a "source" address (in this example the from or return address) and a "destination" address (in this example the to address). These are often abbreviated as dst for destination and src for source. When your computer sends a packet to let's say Google, it forms the packets with a dst address equal to the resolved IP for google.com and uses the PC's IP address as the src address. When Google gets the packets and wants to send it back with the information requested; it reverses the src and dst and you get what you requested. If something goes wrong along the way, upstream routers know what host to send the packet back to as "undeliverable" or "unreachable".

Now, back to our example of input chain rules. Typically, the only packets that should be going to our router are either packets from communications, connections our router has initiated (which we assume to be legitimate and safe), or packets representing us administering or configuring our routers. This greatly narrows down the list of safe host IP addresses and makes creation of firewall rules much simpler. The easiest scheme to use when creating firewall rules is to allow what you determine to be good or safe traffic and then use wildcards to drop all other traffic. You could try and do the opposite and drop all the bad traffic, one protocol and port combination at a time, but to do so would require thousands or millions of rules and then you could never be sure you covered every possible threat. Obviously, that is not a viable scheme so we will allow the good and drop everything else..

So, what is "good" traffic to your firewall router? That's actually easy and can be found by thinking of two things:

- 1. What protocols and ports will you use to administer the router?
- 2. What services will your router provide to the network LAN or WAN?

These two questions will then define all the rules you will place in the "to" chain and everything else will then need to be dropped.

Before we move on, it is necessary to examine the way firewall rules in any chain work. Rules are simply packet matchers. They define certain criteria to identify packets and then they perform some action on those packets. Firewall rules work on an "if-then" principal. "If" a packet matches their criteria, "then" perform the following action on them. The matchers assume that if something is specified, it is identified, if it isn't specified, it matches all packets. The following is an example of a new firewall filter rule created in the input chain.

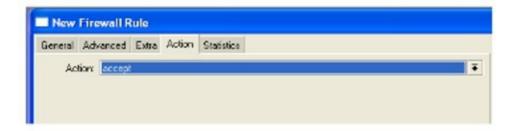
General Advanced Extra Action Statistics	
Chain: Trou	
Src. Address:	
Dst. Address:	•
Protocol]•
Sic, Port:	
Dst. Part	
Any, Port:	
P2P:	•
In. Interface:	
Dut. Interface:	
Packet Mark:	
Connection Mark:	
Routing Mark:	
Routing Table:	
Connection Type:	
Connection State:	

As you can see, nothing has yet been selected other than the chain. This rule then matches all packets going to the router. In the next illustration, we have begun the process of narrowing down the packet matching criteria:

General ,	Advanced Extra Action Statistics	
	Chaire input	
Sic 6	ddress: 192.168.1.0/24	

This rule now matches all types of packets but only if they are coming from (src address) our private LAN. Adding additional criteria will further narrow down the scope of this rule. This is the "if" portion of the rule. Next, we must specify some action to be taken when a packet matches the rule. This is done on the Action tab.

In this illustration, we have selected the default action of "accept".



The action of "accept" allows the packet to enter the firewall. This one rule, although very simplistic in nature, will allow any host in our LAN network of 192.168.1.0/24 to have access to all services on the router itself. The only thing required to complete this very simple input firewall is a rule to drop all other traffic that doesn't come from our LAN. The assumption here is that all traffic from our LAN is safe and everything else is bad, which isn't really good security, but it is sufficient for this example. To create the drop rule, we simply create a second firewall rule matching all traffic by only selecting the input chain and nothing else on the General tab and then selecting an Action of drop.

eneral	Advanced	Extra	Action	Statistics	
Acti	ion: diep				
	Carlo Deput				

It is important to know that firewall rules like almost all rules in RouterOS are processed in order, top to bottom. Therefore if your accept rule is before your drop rule, everything works as expected. If you put your drop rule first, well, you will lose access to your router.

In the previous example, if we put an address from our LAN network on our laptop, we will be able to administer the router using SSH, WinBox, FTP, or HTTP. The router will not respond to pings from the public Internet and we will not be able to access the router from outside our LAN. This is the first building block of a firewall. A better "accept" would further narrow down the range of IP addresses to be allowed to administer the router to only our laptop or only the IP's used by the IT group, etc. In addition, it is advisable to only allow the protocols and ports you will actually use. This is the most secure type of input firewall.

If you follow the example above, you may notice that everything seems to work normally as it relates to accessing the router, however, this firewall will break other services the router provides to the LAN such as DNS if you are using the DNS caching facilities of RouterOS. This is normal.

Learning firewalls can be very frustrating and complex unless you break them down into the building blocks that compose a firewall and teach these blocks in a progressive manner. I always tell my students in class, to not be impatient as we step through this journey, let's learn one piece at a time and then we will put them all together and things will work as expected. I had a guitar teacher that told me "our goal is to *play* the song, not to *finish* the song" and the same applies to learning firewalls.

Connections

Now we will bring in the next piece to the firewall puzzle, connections, but first let's discuss some basics. Communication in networks is conducted using ports; the device sending the packet sends the packet from a port (the source port) and the receiving device receives the packet on a port (destination port). Protocols like TCP or UDP are also used, but let's restrict our discussion to ports for now. These combinations of source and destination port are held constant for each connection between hosts. Our data will be transmitted across these connections. There are four types of connections: new, established, related, and invalid. Let's begin with new.

Generally, every time a router sends a packet to a host for the first time, it opens a new connection. In this scenario, I am defining a new connection as a source/destination/port combination that has never been seen before by either host participating in the communication. I often abbreviate source as src and destination as dst. A connection is only new when it is initiated, and afterward it is considered as established unless it is "disturbed" or stops and then it becomes new again. So what can cause this "disturbance" I just described? That would be an invalid packet. An invalid packet is one that does not belong to any know connection but does not create a new connection. In summary, invalid packets are never useful and therefore should be dropped. They can be created by malformed or misbehaving software or a possible hacking attempt.

In addition to new connections and established connections, there are also related connections. The easiest way to understand related connections is to think about them as what they are not. They are not new because they are created by a connection that has already been seen as new, they are not invalid, and they are not part of the established connection, they are simply related to an already established connection.

The rules to understand here and dedicate to memory are:

A connection is new when its src/dst/port combination is seen for the first time by either host participating in the communication.

A connection is established on the packets following the packet that creates the new connection. Without allowing a new connection to be opened, it can never be established or related.

This is important - the new connections become the gatekeepers of established and related connections. Control the new connections and you control all other connections.

A connection can't be a related connection unless it is first a new connection. Related connections are not new or established but are a part of an established connection.

Invalid connections aren't useful and should be dropped.

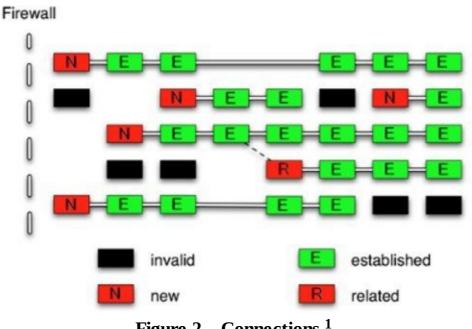


Figure 2 – Connections ¹

In the preceding diagram, you can see several states of connections and the combinations that are possible.

Beginning with the first line, the first packet begins the new connection. All packets following are a part of an established connection.

The second line begins with an invalid connection, not a part of any known connection and not a new connection. Following it is a new connection, then an established connection. The invalid connection "breaks" the established connection and therefore the next packet must begin a new connection.

The third line begins as the first line with a new connection, and then an established connection, and then it spawns a related connection. We now have two parallel connections related to each other.

The fourth line begins as the first but ends with two invalid connections so can you guess what the next connection state would be? If you answered new, you now understand connection states.

Two Ways To Control Access

So far, we have discussed two ways to control access in the input chain. The first method is to simply filter every packet coming into the router. If it passes through our filter it is allowed, if it doesn't pass, it is dropped.

The second method is to filter based on connection state. If the connection is in a certain state, accept it, if not we will drop it. In addition, if a connection is in the invalid state, we will simply drop it.

To understand how these two methods work together and are used by a RouterOS firewall, consider the first example I gave with two input rules. The first rule allowed all traffic from

the LAN network. The second rule dropped everything else. If a host on the LAN tries to ping the router, it will get a reply. If the router tries to ping a host on the LAN, again, it will get a reply. But, what if the router tries to ping a host on the WAN? If you try this, what you will find is that the ping times out. You may ask why, as we are not restricting the router from doing anything, but the answer is that although the router creates and sends the ping packet, it can't get a reply because we are blocking on the input chain. Effectively, the router doesn't know the host sending the reply packet so it drops it.

Since the host you are pinging on the WAN isn't on the LAN network, and therefore not allowed by the first rule, it is dropped by the second rule. One fix for this would be to write a new accept rule to accept ping packets from the WAN host you are pinging, however, this would have to be done for every host you would ever want to ping from your router. Another option is to allow ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol, the protocol ping uses) from all hosts but again this isn't a good solution because it creates a security hole.

This is where connections state matchers can save the day. With connection state matchers, we can assume that if the router itself opens a connection, it is safe to allow a return communications from that host for that one protocol and for that one connection. You can think about connections now as being a two way street or a pipe. Traffic flows both directions once your router opens that pipe. This allows the ping to return from the host it was sent to.

It is not necessary to restrict new connections with firewall rules to the router because the only way a connection can be opened from the router is if we log into the router and generate a ping, open a telnet or SSH session, or use some other protocol that creates a new connection. Another scenario is if the router tries to do a DNS lookup on a DNS server on the WAN interface, it must open a new connection to that remote host. We assume here that connections can not be created from the router unless we initiate them, or we allow them to be initiated by using protocols that open connections like caching DNS. This is a safe assumption. The router opens the new connection and the return is handled using an established connection rule. Therefore, only one established connection rule is needed on the input chain for connections from anywhere to return to the router itself.

So, back to the example with two firewall rules, one to allow packets from the LAN network and a second to drop everything else. By adding a third rule we can allow our router to ping or for it to do DNS lookups by allowing that return path through a connection state rule. This rule must be added above the drop rule and will allow a connection state of established. Add one more rule like it for related packets and this solves the problem.

But now you ask, what about new connections, don't we need a rule to allow them too? In this scenario, new connections are only created when we do something like a ping from the router itself, so that becomes the control. The return connection when the ping packet reply arrives is now in the established state (remember, established connections are those that follow a new connection by virtue of their src/dst/port combinations) so our established connection state rule allows the return path. Obviously a related connection state rule works the same way and is also needed. The final result will be four rules on the input chain:

- 1. A rule to accept everything from the LAN network.
- 2. A rule to accept all established connections.

- 3. A rule to allow all related connections.
- 4. A rule to drop all other packets.

You could add a rule to drop invalid connections but that would be redundant because rule 4 above drops everything else and that includes invalid connections. The input firewall is now complete and you have thereby secured your router.

Forward Chain

As the input chain protects the router, the forward chain protects the clients. In this statement, I am referring to all hosts behind the firewall as the clients. Traffic to and from the hosts behind the firewall passes through the forward chain and so that is where we will place our rules.

Connection state matchers are ideally suited for this job. Consider the following scenario. You want to create filter rules to allow protocols to pass through your firewall and drop hacking attempts. If the only tool in your toolbox is firewall rules that match traffic based upon source IP and/or destination IP, you would actually have to write one rule for each host on the Internet you wanted to allow your customers to access and, one rule for each return path! Obviously, this isn't feasible and port matchers help a little. For instance you could allow all port 80 through the firewall and that helps a lot. Add port 110, 443, etc., and you are certainly on your way, but what about protocols and ports you did not anticipate? What about the scenario when your client wants to use SSH on port 22 or some other new application? That is where connection matchers can once again save the day and that is why I teach the forward chain using connection matchers.

There are several assumptions here:. First, that if a host on your local area network opens a connection to a host on the outside of the firewall, that was an intended operation and you by default are allowing them to do that. Second, remember that once the connection is opened, it is a two-way pipe. The host can now send data to the external host and the reverse flow will also be allowed. So far, none of these caveats create any heartburn for me as a system administrator so let's continue.

By understanding the connection states we discussed previously, we can protect our clients behind the firewall with only a few simple rules. These rules will use matchers based on connection states and allow connections to be initiated only from the LAN, allow two-way communication through the firewall for every connection opened by LAN clients, and drop all other traffic through the firewall. In addition, it will allow you to add additional rules to block certain ports and protocols even if your LAN clients initiate them. Let's begin.

The first rule in our forward chain will allow customers on the LAN to create new connections through the firewall. Since all connection states begin as new connections, by controlling the creation of new connections, we effectively control all access through the firewall. For this purpose, we can use the source address packet matcher in a firewall rule to restrict the first rule to only match packets coming from the LAN. This can be done by simply entering the network address of the LAN in the "Src. Address" field. For example, if your LAN network is 192.168.1.0/24, enter that address in the blank on the General tab. Next, we can use the Connection State matcher to match new connections. Finally, the action of accept

will allow "new" connections, sourced from our LAN to be accepted.

General Adv	vanced Extra Action Statistics	
Cł	ain: forward	-
Src. Addr	ess: 192.168.1.0/24	
Dst. Addr	ess:	
Routing Ta	ible:	
Routing Ta Connection T		

Note that only if the source address is on the LAN will the connection be allowed, so hosts on the WAN side of the router will not be able to open new connections through our firewall.

The next rule will allow related connections. This rule is less restrictive because we have already controlled new connections and secondarily restricted all other connections through this single control. The second rule matches "related" connections in the forward chain with an action of "accept".

eneral	Advanced	Extra	Action	Statistics	
Act	ion: accept	8			

The third rule is similar to the second and allows established connections. Finally for good measure, we drop invalid connections in the forward chain and drag it up to the top of the rule list so it gets processed first.

Filter Ru	IO NAT M	langle Servi	ce Ports Connect	ione	Addres	s Lista	Layer	7 Piol	alooks		
+ ==	1	3	ST Reset Count	ets.	00 Re	iet Al	Counter	8			
#	Action	Chain	Sec. Address	Det .	Pot.	Src	D. I	Out.	Connection State	Bytes	Packets
0	Xdicp	forward			-	-			invalid	324 B	1
1	accept	forward	192,168,1.0/24						new	08	1
2	✓ accept	forward							established	302.7KB	1.09
3	✓ accept	forward							related	08	1

Address Lists

The final piece of the basic firewall puzzle is the one that really simplifies our lives in the firewall world and that is the Address List. Address lists are created to allow a single rule to

apply to one or many groups of IP addresses or subnets.

Without an Address List, it would be necessary to write a separate rule for each IP address, range or subnet for which we wanted to match packets. With an address list based rule, we simply reference an address list name instead of an IP.

To create a new Address List, click on the IP button and select Firewall and click on the Address List tab. There you can click the plus sign to create a new entry and name it as you wish. If this is the second entry for a list, you can use the pull-down list to select the list name. In the address blank you can type an IP address, a subnet or a range. Once the address list entry is created, it can be referenced in a firewall rule on the Advanced tab again using the pull-down.

aonora	Mavancea	Extra Action Statist	ICS .	
Sr	c. Address I	ist 🗌 MyLan		Ŧ

All of this may sound a bit confusing at this point until we tie it all together with some examples. A basic firewall will need two groups of rules on the input chain to protect the router itself and rules on the forward chain to protect the clients on the LAN. Let's dig in now to a comprehensive example.

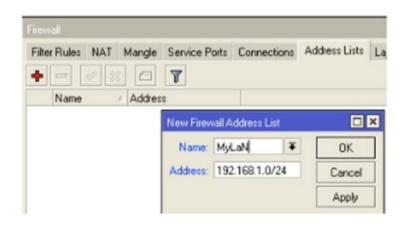
Example – The Basic Firewall

For purposes of this example, we will assume that the LAN is on the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet.

1. In WinBox, click the IP button and select Firewall and click on the Address List tab.

Mesh		
IP	Þ	ARP
MPLS	1	Accounting
Routing	Þ	Addresses
System	D.	DHCP Client
Queues		DHCP Relay
Files		DHCP Server
Log		DNS
Radius		Firewall
· ·	A	

2. Create a new address list entry using the plus sign for 192.168.1.0/24, name it "MyLan" and click OK.



3. Click the IP button, select Firewall and the Filter tab. Click the plus sign to create a new rule.

Rule 1: On the chain, select "input". On the connection state select "invalid" and on the action tab select "drop".

PPP			Frenal Bule O				
Ewish		FilerFules NA	Gential Advance	ed Extra Actio	n Statistice		
Mesh		+	Chain	ings.d.			
P	ARE	4 Action	Sec. Address				
MPLS	Accounting	0 × 40 1 √ 40	On Address				
Rouing	Addesses	2 1 40					
Sycwar	CHOP Client	3 Jac 4 Jac	Protocot				
Queuer	EHOP Role		Ice. Port				
Files	EHCP Server		Dis Pat				
Log	DNS		Avg. Plot				
Rodus	Fiend 🔶						
1003	Hotspot		P2P.				
	Frewal Rule O General Advances Chaire	d Extra Action S	Statistics			Ŧ	
	General Advances		Statistics				
	General Advanced		Statistics			.	
	General Advances		Statistics				
	General Advances Chaire Sic. Address:		Statistics			-	
	General Advances Chaire Sic. Address:	ipu	Statistics			-	
	General Advancer Chaire Src. Address: [Dst. Address:] Connection	Type:	Statistics				
	General Advancer Chaire Src. Address: [Dst. Address:] Connection	ipu	Statistics				Ŧ
	General Advances Chaire Src. Address: Dst. Address: Connection Connection	Type:	Statistics				Ŧ
	General Advanced Chairs Src. Address: Dst. Address: Connection Connection	Type: State: invalid		Statistics			
	General Advances Chairs Sic. Address: Dst. Address: Connection Connection Fire Ge	Type: State: inwalid wal Bule co metal Advanced		Statistics			
	General Advances Chairs Sic. Address: Dst. Address: Connection Connection Fire Ge	Type: State: invalid		Statistics			Ŧ
	General Advances Chairs Sic. Address: Dst. Address: Connection Connection Fire Ge	Type: State: inwalid wal Bule co metal Advanced		Statistics			
	General Advances Chairs Sic. Address: Dst. Address: Connection Connection Fire Ge	Type: State: inwalid wal Bule co metal Advanced		Statistics			

Rule 2: Click the plus sign to create a new rule.

On the chain, select "forward". On the connection state select "invalid" and on the action tab select "drop".

neral	Advanced Extra Action Statistics Chain: Torward	
Src./	Address:	-
Dat.	Connection Type:	•
	Connection State: invalid	
1	Frewal Rule O	
	General Advanced Extra Action Statistics	
	Action: drop	

These two rules drop invalid connections to and through the router.

Rule 3: Click the plus sign to create a new rule.

On the chain, select "input". On the advanced tab select "Src. Address List" and on the pull-down select the new entry you just created for "MyLan". On the Action tab select "accept". This rule will allow anyone on your LAN to administer the router. Obviously, you can be more restrictive if you wish.

In Address Frewal Rule Co General Advanced Extra Action Statistics Sto. Address List MgLan Dst. Address List	Chan ngu	
General Advanced Extra Action Statistics Strc. Address List MyLan		-
Dist. Address List	Stc. Address List 🔲 MyLan	Ŧ
	Dist. Address List	-
Firewall Rule ()	Firewall Rule <>	
General Advanced Extra Action Statistics	General Advanced Extra Action Statistics	

Rule 4: Click the plus sign to create a new rule.

On the chain, select "input". On the "Connection State" select "established" and on the "Action" tab select "accept". This rule will allow our router to communicate with other hosts for services like ping or telnet.

Chain: input	Ŧ
Src. Address:	•
Routing Mark:	
Routing Table:	
Connection Type:	
Connection State: established	Ŧ
Frewat Rule 🔿	
General Advanced Extra Action Statistics	
Action accept	

Rule 5: Click the plus sign to create a new rule.

For this rule, make sure you are in Safe Mode as a mistake here will disconnect you from the router. On the chain, select "input". On the "Action" tab select "drop". This rule will drop all other hosts trying to access our router.

🗧 🔍 🛛 Safe Mo	ide
Interfaces	
Witeless	
val Rule O	
	Extra Action Statistics
Chain: inp	
Src. Address:	
	Firewall Rule O
Dsl. Address:	and the second sec
Dist. Address:	General Advanced Extra Action Statistics

Rule 6: Click the plus sign to create a new rule.

On the chain, select "forward". On the connection state select "new". On the advanced tab select the Src. Address List as "MyLan" previously created, and on the action tab select "accept". This rule will allow new connections from our LAN to pass through the router.

eneral Advanced Extra Action Statistics			
Chain: Ionward	Ŧ		
Sic. Address:	•		
Routing Mark:		-	
Routing Table:		-	
houng rabe.			
Connection Type:		-	
	1.0		
Connection State: new	3		
Firewal Rule <>			
General Advanced Extra Action Statistics			
		114	-
Sic. Address List: 13 MyLan		12	•
] Dist. Address List:			
Frewal Rule O			
I I supr Dicker	001		
General Advanced Extra Action Statisti	Ce		
Action: accept			

Rule 7: Click the plus sign to create a new rule.

On the chain, select "forward". On the connection state select "related" and on the action tab select "accept". This rule will allow related connections through the router.

	nced Extra Action Statistics	¥
Stc. Addres	18: [•
Dst Addres	8.	•
	ion State: related	Į
	General Advanced Extra Action Statistics	
	Action: accept	

Rule 8: Click the plus sign to create a new rule.

On the chain, select "forward". On the connection state select "established" and on the action tab select "accept". This rule will allow established connections through the router.

Chai	x forward	Ŧ
Src. Addres	K	•
Dst. Addres	r l	-
	ection Type: ection State: established	
	Firewall Rule <>	
	General Advanced Extra Action Statistics	
	Action: accept	

The last rule drops all other connections through the router. Rule 9: Click the plus sign to create a new rule.

On the chain select "forward" and on the action tab select "drop".

exal Rule <>	
eneral Advanced Extra Action Statistics	
Chain Iorward	Ŧ
Sic. Address	•
Dst. Address:	•
Dit Paulois	1.
Protoce Frewal Bule O	
Src. Po General Advanced Extra Action Statistics	
Action: drop	
ACUOT. CICO	

Summary of Rules

Rule 1 &2: Drops invalid connections on input and forward chains.

Rule 3: Allows administration of the router (and any other services the router can provide such as DNS to LAN clients) from the LAN.

Rule 4: Since we aren't restricting the creation of new connections on the input chain, we assume new connections from the router are only created if we are administering the router and trying to initiate a connection from it such as pinging, opening a telnet session from WinBox, etc. If a new connection is created, the response must be acceptable so we allow established connections. This makes everything work correctly.

Rule 5: This is our drop rule for the input chain. The assumption is that we have already allowed everything that should be allowed so we drop everything else which is standard firewall philosophy.

Rule 6: This is where we control the creation of new connections and restrict them only to connections that are sourced from our LAN.

Rule 7: Since we restricted new connections in step 6. Now we allow related connections.

Rule 8: Since we restricted new connections in step 6. Now we allow established connections.

Rule 9: This is our drop rule for the forward chain. The assumption is that we have already allowed everything that should be allowed so drop everything else, standard firewall philosophy.

This example can be extended and serves only as the foundation of a stateful firewall. If you want to restrict certain protocols, for instance, SSH from the LAN, it is now fairly simple to create a rule to drop that protocol on the forward chain by matching port 22 with an action of drop. Put that rule at or near the top of your list and LAN clients will not be able to initiate SSH connections outside the firewall.

For Further Study: RouterOS also offers some "smart" rules to detect port scans, match connections, and many other more complex functions that are outside the scope of this book.

Chapter 9 – NAT, Network Address Translation

In the previous chapter hopefully it was made clear the importance of understanding the source IP, destination IP, source port, and destination port of an IP packet with respect to firewalls. Combined with connection states, these four simple pieces of information can be leveraged to assemble powerful firewalls that rival equipment costing many times more than a MikroTik RouterOS device. In addition to the firewall function, these four pieces of information can be tracked and manipulated using a function called NAT or Network Address Translation.

NAT is the process of changing the original source IP, destination IP, source port, or destination port of an IP packet. It allows functions such as masquerading, which is hiding a private network behind a public network address. It also allows the opposite function, destination NAT, allowing public access to a private server.

NAT functions, similar to firewall functions, are organized in chains. The default chains are:

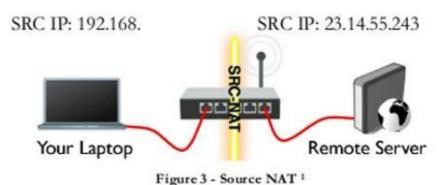
- 1. Source NAT ("srcnat"), that is changing the source IP address of the packet.
- 2. Destination NAT ("dstnat"), which is changing the destination IP address of the packet.

Source NAT

With source NAT, the most common function is masquerading, hiding a private network behind a public address. This function allows a router with a single public IP address to function as an Internet gateway for a handful or even thousands of hosts or computers located behind the device on a private network. Like all NAT functions, the process is fairly simple; change the source or destination IP address or port based on a rule. Like all firewall functions, the rule itself is based on a packet matcher. The most simple source NAT rule, the masquerade rule, simply involves configuring the chain as "srcnat", matching packets going to the Internet by matching the "out interface", and setting an action of masquerade.

The first matcher "srcnat" tells the router to strip off the source IP address from the packet. In this case, the source IP address will be the private address of the host or computer on the 192.168.1.0/24 network. For example, if a host at 192.168.1.2 sends a packet to the Internet, it will be sourced as 192.168.1.2 when it enters our firewall. Since the rule is a source NAT rule, the router knows to strip the source IP address. The second packet matcher "out interface" tells the router to only apply the rule to packets leaving interface ether1, which is the interface, connected to the Internet in this example. The action of "masquerade" tells the router to exchange the source IP address (the private IP) for its own IP bound to the interface from which the packet is leaving (the public IP). Once the switch is done, the departing packet no longer is sourced from 192.168.1.2, instead it is source and destination IP addresses and ports in its connection tracking table.

SRC-NAT



This is necessary so that when the packet returns from the host it was sent to, the router will know what to do with it. In this case a returning packet will enter the router, the source and destination IP address and ports will be matched against the connection tracking table and if

destination IP address and ports will be matched against the connection tracking table and if there is a match, the destination IP (now the public IP of the router) will be stripped off and the private IP of the host that send the original packet will be applied.

Destination NAT

Source NAT is typically used for masquerade but also has other usefulness. First, we must understand the function of destination NAT. With the popularity of enterprises operating their own mail servers, it has become fairly common to host a mail server or web server on the private network. Doing this enables protection of the device with the firewall while still allowing the device to access the Internet via source NAT and masquerade. However, with only a source NAT rule, the device is not accessible from the public Internet. That may be the desired scenario but in the case of a mail server or web server, the ability to access the device from the public Internet may be desired and that is where destination NAT or "dstnat" becomes useful.

In source NAT, we described the process of stripping off the private IP address from a packet and replacing it with the public IP address of the router. Destination NAT operates the same way, but instead the rules are located in the "dstnat" chain and the behavior is to strip off the destination IP address from the packet and replace it with a new one. The function can also be performed for destination port as well.

In our example, we have a mail server located on the private network and we want to allow inbound mail to be delivered to the mail server. To accomplish this, we can create a new NAT rule with the chain "dstnat" and match all packets hitting our public IP address ("Dst. Address"). We use our public IP address in the rule because that is the IP address we will publish via DNS (Domain Name System which is handled by Domain Name Servers) as the address of our mail server. Since other mail servers will send packets to that IP we will then have to take those packets, strip off their destination IP address, and replace it with the private destination IP address in our rule.

The process occurs as follows:

IP Firewall Diagram

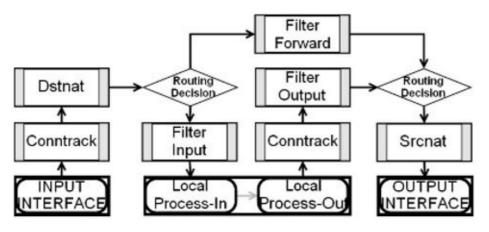


Figure 4 - Packet Flow Diagram 1

Once again, connection tracking tracks the source and destination IP address and ports and thereby knows what to do with the packet when it is returned by the target host. Destination NAT's do not have to use the same port from the packet matcher on the action tab, instead, we can change the port as well as the IP address if desired. For example, a packet entering the router on port 80 (typical HTTP or web port) can be translated to port 8080 on our internal web server. This allows us to use port 80 on the web server for a different function like a local intranet. The port change is made on the action tab, an example of which follows hereafter. Why would you want to do that? One application is an office that has a single public IP address. Their web server is hosted on the private network and operates on port 80 and they want to give the public access to their web site. The same company operates a second private web server on a separate host server that runs a web server on port 80 for their partners. With only one public IP address and two web server machines that run their web service on port 80, we now have a quandary. The answer lies in using destination NAT to change the destination port.

Host 1 – Public Web Server

Public IP: 12.238.96.5, standard HTTP port 80

Private IP: 192.168.1.10, web service runs on standard HTTP port 80

Host 2 – Partner Web Server

Public IP: 12.238.96.5, non-standard port 8080

Private IP: 192.168.1.11, web service runs on standard HTTP port 80

Now we need two NAT rules:

The first rule is the dstnat chain, protocol TCP, destination port 80, action destination NAT, destination IP is 192.168.1.10 and the destination port is 80.

The second rule is the dstnat chain, protocol TCP, destination port 8080, action destination NAT, destination IP is 192.168.1.11 and the destination port is 80.

To summarize these processes, NAT is simply the function of changing or manipulating the source or destination IP address and/or ports of packets entering or leaving the router. In simple terms, source NAT refers to packets leaving the router and destination NAT refers to packets entering the router. The most common us of source NAT is for the masquerading action and the most common type of destination NAT is to NAT a public IP to a private IP.

Special Types of NAT Rules

Source NAT With Multiple Public IP Addresses

If you have a single public IP address on your Internet facing interface and a default route to your provider on that subnet, it is fairly easy to see that any packets processed by the masquerade rule will result in packets being sourced from your router's public IP address. In many scenarios this is acceptable but what if you add a secondary IP to the Internet facing interface on a different subnet and use that IP for a mail server located on the private network? With the amount of unsolicited email (SPAM) that is processed every day by mail servers around the globe, careful controls are now in place almost universally to control the origin of emails. One of these controls is reverse DNS, the ability to look up the source address of the mail server trying to deliver mail to our mail server and ensure it is a member of the domain name, which it reports to be. In the preceding example, if the forward DNS entry for our mail server resolves to the secondary IP address on our router and the reverse DNS is set the same, we would need a way to manipulate packets such that, the source IP of all packets leaving our mail server is set to the secondary address. This would not be the normal behavior for a single source NAT rule with the action masquerade.

Here is an example:

Public IP of our router: 23.0.12.2

Default gateway of our router: 23.0.12.1

Mail Server private IP: 192.168.1.2

Secondary public IP used for inbound access to our mail server: 23.0.12.3

For inbound email, if we use a destination NAT rule to receive mail on 23.0.12.3 and destination NAT it to 192.168.1.2, that works well, however, with only a masquerade in place to masquerade everything leaving our public interface, all traffic including mail being sent by our mail server will be sourced from 23.0.12.2, thereby breaking mail. The solution here is a source NAT rule. The rule would match packets coming from 192.168.1.2 and have an action or source NAT to IP address 23.0.12.3. This rule solves the issue.

Destination NAT with Action Redirect

Each of the actions you set for a NAT rule accomplishes a more complex function in the background. The masquerade action for instance strips the source IP and applies the router's public (outgoing) IP while destination NAT strips the destination IP address or port and applies a different destination IP address or port. There is another useful action called "redirect" that is often used for certain applications.

Consider an example. You operate a network and use your upstream provider's DNS servers for your customers. Many of your customers have static IP's and static DNS entries. For whatever reason the decision is made to change upstream providers, however, your current provider does not allow DNS resolution from IP's outside its network. Obviously you could use a NAT rule with masquerade to masquerade the old provider's public IP's and treat them as private IP's while you are transitioning over to the new provider, but what about the static DNS entries? This is where the redirect action can step in.

Think of redirect as a transparent NAT, it transparently applies a NAT action to packets based on matching criteria. The other important thing to remember for a redirect rule is that it "captures" the traffic and processes it on the router itself. This is a different action than a destination NAT rule with an action of destination NAT.

To summarize the difference between these two types of rules, think of it like this: A NAT rule with an action of destination NAT sends the traffic to a host while a destination NAT rule with an action of redirect "captures" the traffic and processes it on the router.

Getting back to our example, we can remedy the DNS issue by capturing the DNS requests on the router and processing them there using the router's internal caching DNS server. We will discuss caching DNS later in this book, but let it suffice to say for now we have already configured caching DNS on the router and it is able to resolve DNS requests from the new provider's DNS servers. In this case, simply create a new destination NAT rule with matchers for protocol TCP, port 53, and an action of redirect to port 53. The second rule we need is a duplicate of the first with a protocol of UDP. These two rules will capture all DNS requests trying to go to our old provider's DNS servers and answer them on the router itself. We can then take our time doing the IP transition on the network to the new provider's IP's.

Another example of using redirect is to create a transparent proxy. If we aren't familiar with proxy servers (the most popular one is called Squid), their function is to accept web requests (HTTP traffic) and then proxy those requests to the public network. These pages fetched may be stored in memory or on disk for later serving to proxy clients. This speeds up network access, enables the use of access rules to restrict use of the Internet, and gives the ability to redirect web pages, or many other useful functions described later in this book under the IP Web Proxy function.

If we want this function to be applied without the knowledge of your clients or users and without intervention on their part, again a redirect rule is the answer. In this scenario, create a new destination NAT rule matching protocol TCP, port 80, with an action of redirect to port 8080 (or whatever port we have IP Web Proxy running on at the router). Once configured, all HTTP requests to the Internet will be intercepted at the router and handled by the proxy server.

Example – A Simple Masquerade Rule

For purposes of this example, we will assume the Internet is connected to ether1.

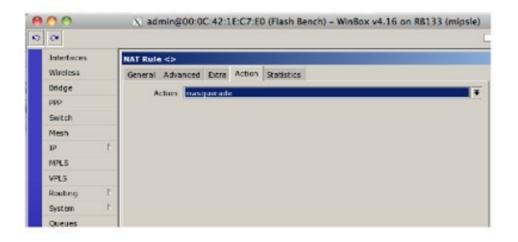
1. Create a new Nat rule using IP button then Firewall and then click the NAT tab and the plus sign.

	00	IX.	admin@00.0C:42:1	F.C
*)	Q			
	Interfaces			
	Wireless		1	
	Bridge		Wireless Tables	
	PPP		Interfaces Nstreme	Dua
	Switch		+ - 2 8	1
	Mesh		Name	T
	D>	1	ARP	W
	MPLS		Accounting	
	VPLS		Addresses	
	Routing	1	DHCP Client	
	System	Þ	DHCP Relay	
	Queues		DHCP Server	
	Files		DNS	
	Log		Firewall	-
	Radius		Hotspot	
	T	8-	the second s	

2. Select the chain "srcnat" and set the outgoing interface to ether1.

C*		
Interfaces	NAT Rule <>	
Mireless	General Advanced Extra Action Statistics	
Inidge	Chain srcnat	
PPP	Src. Address	
Switch		
Mesh	Dst. Address:	
P	Protocol:	
MPLS	Sec. Part	
VPLS		
Routing	P Ost Part:	
Bystem	P Any Part	
Queues	In. Interface:	
Fles	Out. Interface: ther1	1
.og		
Radius	Packet Mark:	
Fools	Connection Mark:	
New Terminal	Routing Mark:	
Make Supput rif	Routing Table	
Manual		

3. Select the Action tab and select "masquerade".



This rule matches all traffic going out the Internet interface (not local traffic) and applies the masquerade action to it. I have seen many very knowledgeable people use more complex packet matchers but this rule is all that is required and works well.

Example – Destination NAT for a Web Server on the Private Network with Port Translation

In this example, you want to run a web server on your local area network using a private IP address but also make a web site available to the general public. On your web server, you run your company's Microsoft SharePoint server on port 80 and only want it available to local hosts. Your company's public web site runs on port 8080 on the server, and you want available to the general public outside your firewall on the standard HTTP port 80.

To accomplish this:

1. Create a new Nat rule using IP button, then Firewall, and then click the NAT tab and the plus sign.



2. Select the chain "dstnat", the Dst. Address as the address of the public IP (in this case 66.76.100.2), the protocol as "TCP", and the destination port as port 80.

General	Advanced	Extra	Action	St	atisti	tics						
	Chain: d	stnat										•
Src. a	Address:											-
Dst.	Address: 🗌	66.76.	100.2									-
	Protocol:	6 (tcp)					_			Ŧ	
	Src. Port:											
	Dst. Port:	80		_	_	_	_	_				-
,	Any. Port:											-
In. I	nterface:											-
Out. In	nterface:			_	_	_	_	_	_			-

3. On the action tab, select the action "dst-nat", the destination address as the private IP of your web server, and the destination port as 8080.

neral Adva	nced Extra	Action	Statistics	
Action:	dst-nat			
Addresses:	192.168.1.2]•
To Ports:	8080			

The rule matches all TCP packets going to the public IP on port 80, strips the destination address, and replaces it with the private IP address of the web server. It also replaces the destination port with port 8080. To the outside world, there appears to be a web server running on port 80 on 66.76.100.2.

Example – Source NAT to Source Traffic From a Certain IP Address

The example above assumes that you only have a single IP address on your public facing interface. In some setups, you may have multiple public IP addresses on some or all interfaces including the public facing interface. In this scenario, traffic being masqueraded by the router with a single masquerade rule and no other NAT rules will generally be sourced from the IP address that is common to the default route. This is certainly true in the example described above.

To be clear, if your public IP is 66.76.100.2 and your default gateway is 66.76.100.1, any traffic that goes out the public interface will be sourced from 66.76.100.2 even if other IP's are bound to that interface. So, what if you get another IP address from your provider for a new web server to operate publically on 66.76.100.3, and you create a destination NAT rule similar to the example above for this new IP to go to 192.168.1.10? This will work fine but for the fact that traffic leaving the router will still be sourced from 66.76.100.2. This may

appear to work but it may break certain protocols or cause other issues. To solve this problem we can use source NAT.

1. Create a new Nat rule using IP button, then Firewall, the NAT tab, and then the plus sign.



2. Create a new NAT rule in the "srcnat" chain.

General	Advanced Extra Action Statistics	
	Chain: srcnat	
Src. J	Address: 192.168.1.10	
Dst. /	Address:	
	Protocol:	
	Src. Port:	•
ja ja	Dst. Port:	
	an Dark	

3. On the Action tab, select the action "src-nat" and the To Address as 66.76.100.3.

General	Advance	ed Extra	Action	Statistics	
А	ction: sr	c-nat			
To Addre	esses: 6	5.76.100.3			
То	Ports:				

This rule matches all traffic coming from the new web server, strips the source address, and replaces it with the secondary public IP 66.76.100.3 for outbound traffic.

In this scenario, two rules are needed: one to destination NAT inbound traffic on TCP port 80

to go 192.168.1.10 and one to source any traffic from 192.168.1.10 from 66.76.100.3 as it leaves the router.

Example – Destination NAT with the Action Redirect

In this example, we want to "trap" all DNS outbound traffic from the local area network and process the DNS requests on our Internet router. We have already configured the caching DNS server on the router and now only need to intercept UDP and TCP port 53 packets.

1. Create a new Nat rule using IP button, Firewall, the NAT tab and then the plus sign.

IP	4	ARP
MPLS	1	Accounting
Routing	ħ.	Addresses
System	ħ	DHCP Client
Queues		DHCP Relay
Files		DHCP Server
Log		DNS
Radius		Firewall

2. Select the protocol as "TCP" and the destination port as port 53.

General	Advanced	Extra	Action	Statistics		
	Chain: d	stnat				
Src.	Address:					•
Dst.	Address:] •
	Protocol:	6 (tcp)		Ŧ	
	Src. Port:					
	Dst. Port: 🗌	53].
	Any. Port:] •
In I	nterface:					1

3. On the action tab, select the action "redirect".

teral Advi	anced B	dra Action	Statistics	
Action:	redirect			
To Ports:				

4. Repeat the process for UDP port 53.

These rules will match all DNS packets, (UDP and TCP), intercept them, and process directly on the router. This example is useful when you want to force the use of your DNS server.

Service Ports - NAT Helpers

You will likely never find yourself looking for the menu to configure NAT helpers as this feature is seldom changed and usually only discovered by accident. If you happen to click the IP button and then select Firewall and click on the Service Port tab, there you will see the NAT Helpers that have been included with the NAT facility. These modules, enabled by default, can be disabled or manipulated by changing the port on which they operate. Their function is to "help" certain protocols by identifying packets that are using that protocol. Connection tracking can be given knowledge of application-layer protocols and thus understand that two or more distinct connections are "related". A great example of this is FTP, or File Transfer Protocol. During a FTP session, a control connection is established, but whenever data is transferred, a separate connection is established to transfer it. The function of the NAT helper is to identify the first packet of a new FTP control connection so that the data connection will be marked as "related" instead of "new", as it is logically part of an existing connection.

Typically, there is no reason to make changes to these Service Ports unless you are running these protocols on non-standard ports. There is also no reason to disable them. Simply know they are there to make NAT work better and leave them alone.

Connection Tracking (on and off)

By default, connection tracking sometimes called "conntrack" is turned on. As previously stated, connection tracking is the facility that makes RouterOS a stateful firewall and enables NAT and filter rules. Turning it off will disable both NAT and firewall functions completely so it is typically a good idea to leave it alone. However, there is always an exception to the rule and in this case, there may be an application where turning it off is desired. For example, if a router is located in the interior of a secure network, that is, it has no access from the outside world and no chance of being attacked, turning connection tracking off will make a considerable improvement in the performance of the router. It will be able to route more packets faster because it isn't using resources for tracking connections. Again, this will disable NAT so it can not be turned off on an Internet or gateway router or firewall.

One example of where you might want to turn connection tracking off is a device that has a wireless interface bridged to an Ethernet interface. Turning connection tracking off will improve the performance of the wireless link provided that is the limiting factor and there isn't an issue with interference, Fresnel zone encroachment, and the like.

To further quantify the increase in performance by turning off connection tracking, consider the published performance of the RouterBOARD 750 with connection tracking off.

RB750GL @400M	HHz (2 port test)		1518 byte	e frames
IP Firewall	Conntrack	Mode	Mbps	Fps
off	off	Bridging	949.66	78200
on	off	Routing	631.49	52000
on	off	Bridging	650.92	53600
on	on	Routing	479.69	39500
on	on	Bridging	386.18	31800

Figure 5 - Conn Track On/Off 1

As you can see with connection tracking turned off, the router enjoys a 32% increase in throughput. Again, consider the application before making changes to connection tracking.

Example – Disable Connection Tracking

1. Select the IP button and then Firewall menu.

Mesh	
IP i	ARP
MPLS	Accounting
VPLS	Addresses
Routing	DHCP Client
System	DHCP Relay
Queues	DHCP Server
Files	DN5
Log	Firewall 🤙
Radius	Hotspot
Tools	IPsec
New Terminal	Neighbors

2. Select the Connections tab and click the Tracking button.

	Connection Tracking	
	I (Enabled	ОК
	TCP Syn Sent Timeout: 00:00:05	Cancel
	TCP Syn Received Timeout: 00:00:05	Apply
	TCP Established Timeout: 1d 00:00 00	
Irewall	TCP Fin Wait Timeout: 00:0010	
Filter Rules NAT Mangar Service Ports Connections Add	TCP Close Wait Timeout: 00:00:10	
- Tracking	TCP Last Ack Timeout: 00:00 10	
Src. Address / Dst. Address Proto Conner	TCP Time Wait: 00:00 10	
U 0.0.0.5678 255.255.255.255.5678 17 (TCP Close: 00:00:10	

3. Uncheck "Enabled" and click OK.

Connection tracking is now disabled.

Tools – Torch

Having used equipment for many years from many different manufacturers, I would have to say that one feature that really makes RouterOS stand head and shoulders above the rest is the number of tools that are available to the user inside the user interface. I would venture to say that RouterOS has the most tools, more than any other software, and Torch is one of those very useful tools.

Torch is a real-time tool that will give you an instant picture of all traffic passing through an interface. Better yet, it gives you the ability to sort that traffic and filter by IP address and port, and the ability to sort the traffic ascending or descending by rate. By using torch, you instantly know who is using your bandwidth and how they are using it. It is great for determining the effectiveness of queues and firewall rules in real-time. Torch is available in many different places in RouterOS such as by right clicking queues, interfaces, or through the Tools menu by selecting Torch.



Once torch loads, you will be presented with a display that allow you to select the interface to be monitored, as well as defining several filters to further restrict the traffic that is observed.

Basic		Filter	5			Start
Interface:	ether1	F Src. Ad	dress:	0.0.0.0/0		Stop
intry Timeout:	00:00:03	s Dst. Ad	Idress:	0.0.0.0/0		Close
Collect		Pr	otocoi:	any	Ŧ	
 Src. Addre Dst. Addre 			Port	any	Ŧ	l.
VLAN Id		: 14	AN Id:	any	Ŧ	1
						Find
Src. Addres	s Dst. Address	TxRate	Rx Rate	Tx Pack	Rx Pack	Find
Src. Addres	state and state	Tx Rate 7.0 kbps	Statistics of the local dist			Find
and the second se	10.0.1.1		4.2 kb	ps 3	6	Find
10.0.25.243	10.0.1.1 208.91.12.164	7.0 kbps	4.2 kb	ps 3 ps 10	6 6 10	Find
10.0.25.243	10.0.1.1 208.91.12.164 216.81.36.4	7.0 kbps 5.2 kbps	4.2 kb 4.1 kb 2.0 kb	ps 3 ps 10 ps 5	5 6 10 5	Find

From torch it is possible to collect the source address and port, the destination address and port, and/or the ability to filter by protocol. Combined with the real time rate of traffic flow, this becomes a very powerful diagnostic tool for IP networks. Torch is available from the tools menu, by right clicking an interface and by right clicking a Queue.

Example – Determining the Source of Traffic on a Network

I have seen this particular problem many times as an Internet service provider: A customer calls to complain about the speed of their connection. I log into their CPE (Customer Premise Equipment), in this case a MikroTik router, and see that they are using the full 2 Mb they are paying for. I inform them of this and their response is "That is impossible. I don't have any programs running, and I am the only one using the Internet.". By using torch, I quickly learn that there is a constant 2 Mb stream from a private IP on their LAN subnet. After a few minutes of talking, we discover the IP address streaming the traffic is not theirs and track it down to a child's computer which is on and is happily sharing files with who knows how many peers via bit torrent. So how do we learn the identity of this host on the network? Here is an example:

1. Click the Tools button and then select Torch.



2. From the Torch window select the interface where you want to discover traffic and then click start. With Torch running, you can sort by Tx or Rx (Transmit or Receive rate based on the perspective of the interface) and learn the source of the highest rate traffic on the network.

Basic		Filters				Start
Interface:	ether1	F Src. Add	Iress: 0.0.0.	Q/0		Stop
Entry Timeout:	00:00:03	s Dst. Add	ress: 0.0.0.	oyo		Close
Collect		Prot	tocol: any		Ŧ	Ciuse
Src. Addre			Port: any		¥	
VLAN 1d		VLA	N Id: any		*	
		*				Find
Src. Addres	is Dst. Address	Tx Rate T	Rx Rate	Tx Pack	Rx Pack	Find
Src. Addres 10.025.238			Rx Rate		and the second sec	Find
	65.55.87.96	376.1 kbps	and the second se	35	and the second sec	Find
10.0.25.238	65.55.87.96	376.1 kbps	12.3 kbps 4.1 kbps	35	24 5	Find
10.0.25.238	65.55.87.96 10.0.25.1 80.108.117.15	376.1 kbps 6.0 kbps	12.3 kbps 4.1 kbps 58.5 kbps	35 2 8	24 5 12	Find

Torch is a great customer service tool. It ends customer complaints quickly with proof to support your data.

Chapter 10 - Bandwidth Limits

If I had to name one area where I see the greatest interest in RouterOS, it has to be with bandwidth limitation and Quality of Service or QOS. These two topics really go hand in hand, and incorporating them into your network will almost certainly "tame the savage beast" or at least fend off the gremlins that are stalking your network, trying to steal your resources. RouterOS offers several schemes to control bandwidth and each has its benefits and costs.

Simple Queues

I always begin my classroom instruction on simple queues by saying "The best thing about simple queues is that they are simple, and the worst thing about simple queues is that they are simple." Simple queues are intelligent little modules that were created to allow you a simple and fast means of limiting bandwidth. They are extremely powerful in what they do behind the scenes and they allow even a RouterOS novice to quickly implement a basic bandwidth limitation and QoS system. The price you pay for using them is paid in CPU resources. Each simple queue you create also creates several hidden queues in the background that perform the more complex function configured by the simple queue.

That being said, it is important to use them sparingly. For a more evolved queuing system, rely on more complex queues that are actually more efficient in their operation. For example, PCC or Per Connection Classifiers enable you to create a handful of queues that can control bandwidth for thousands of clients. These will be discussed later in this chapter.

Simple queues are configured by referencing the target address of the device you are trying to control bandwidth to and then initiating a limit for upload and download. This "device" referenced here is typically a customer or client. These are the only pieces of information that need to be configured to have a working queuing system. To further explain let's look at an example.

Simple queues are configured from the Queues menu on the Simple Queues tab.

General	Advanced	Statistics	Traff	fic Total To	tal Sta	tistics	OK
_	Name: q	ueue1				1	Cancel
	-	ueuei					Cancel
Target A	ddress:						Apply
-		Target Uplo	ad	Target De	wnload	t	Disable
Ma	ax Limit: u	nlimited	Ŧ	unlimited	₹	bits/s	Comment
A Burs		nlimited 🛩	Ţ	unlimited	Ŧ	bits/s	Сору
	100			-	N		Remove
Burst Thi	reshold: u	nlimited	Ŧ	unlimited	Ŧ	bits/s	
Bur	st Time: 0			0		s	Reset Counters
▼- Tim	e						Reset All Counter
							Torch

Name the queue anything you like, but I advise that it be descriptive of the function of the queue such as using a customer name. Next is "Target Address", which is the IP address of the target customer or device. This blank has the availability of a down arrow at the end such that multiple IP addresses can be assigned to the same queue. In addition, a network or subnet can also be assigned to the queue. For example, setting a target address of 192.168.1.0/24 will limit bandwidth to 254 hosts in that network. It is important to note that simple queues when used with multiple IP addresses or networks do not create a separate queue, instead all hosts defined by the target address will share the queue.

In the example above, a "max-limit" setting of 1M for the queue will be shared by all 254 hosts in the subnet. It is also important to note that the "sharing" of bandwidth behavior described is in no way allocated evenly. In reference to the "max-limit" setting, these are the limits that are applied to the target address for upload and download. These four settings, "name", "target address", "max limit" upload and download are the only setting required to have a full functioning simple queue.

In this first example, our goal was to influence bandwidth supplied to a customer but limitations can also be applied to servers or web sites. While customers or clients are considered "target addresses", servers or host destinations are referred to as "destination addresses" and can be limited in a similar fashion.

For example, if you wanted to limit bandwidth to a web site like mikrotik.com, the process would be to create a new queue as describe above with one change. Instead of specifying an IP address on the target address line, leave that line blank and click the Advanced tab. On the Advanced tab, specify in the "Dst. Address" blank, the IP address for www.mikrotik.com. You can determine that IP address by pinging <u>www.mikrotik.com</u> and writing down the IP address that is resolved. This function gives you a lot of granularity because you can restrict

bandwidth to certain destinations, subnets, address ranges, and the like.

Bursting

The term bursting is used to describe a behavior of the bandwidth limitation system where a destination is allowed to reach a certain level of upload or download bandwidth for some period of time and then a lower limitation is applied for the duration of the upload or download. By allowing these short bursts of bandwidth, the overall customer experience for browsing the web, checking email and similar common functions is enhanced, while large downloads are "throttled back". This controls the average bandwidth usage of the client.

This strategy was once used widely, but with the recent popularity of streaming movies and similar service offerings, bursting now has less appeal for the service provider. The problem created by allowing bursting for clients who are streaming movies is that the movie appears to load at first, they see a few seconds and then the quality is reduced to an unacceptable level once the maximum limit is applied after the burst. This behavior, although intended by the service provider, will certainly generate technical support phone calls or unhappy customers. Therefore, you should consider your clientele before configuring bursting queues on your network.

With simple queues, bursting can be applied to a queue that references a target IP address or a queue that references a destination IP address, so bursting is applicable to both queue types previously described herein.

General	Advand	ed Statistics	Traff	fic Total Tot	tal Sta	tistics	ОК
	Name:	queue1					Cancel
Target A	ddress:						Apply
		✓ Target Upl	oad	✓ Target Do	wnload	t	Disable
M	ax Limit:	unlimited	Ŧ	unlimited	Ŧ	bits/s	Comment
Burs	st st Limit:	unlimited	Ŧ	unlimited	Ŧ	bits/s	Сору
	reshold:		₹	unlimited	Ŧ		Remove
	st Time:	-		0		s	Reset Counters
-▼- Tim	e						Reset All Counters
							Torch

Let's take a look at the configuration of a queue with reference to bursting.

Note: If you don't see the options illustrated above, you may need to click the triangle next to

the word "Burst" to expand the burst section.

The settings that configure burst are "Burst Limit", "Burst Threshold" and "Burst Time".

Quoting from the MikroTik Wiki:

burst-limit (NUMBER): maximal upload/download data rate which can be reached while the burst is allowed.

burst-time (TIME) : period of time, in seconds, over which the average data rate is calculated. (This is NOT the time of actual burst).

burst-threshold (NUMBER) : this is value of burst on/off switch.

Of these values, the first appears fairly obvious; "**burst-limit**" is the maximum bandwidth you are going to allow during this bursting period. Slightly less obvious is the burst threshold. Think of the burst threshold as an on/off switch. When we hit the value of the burst threshold, the timer starts and we are allowed to burst up to the burst limit for some period of time. I have seen many theories on the proper setting of the burst threshold but for purposes of our discussion, I rely on the MikroTik RouterOS manual, which states that for the optimal performance, the **burst-threshold** must be less than the **max-limit**, which must be less than the **burst-limit** or stating it another way:

burst-threshold < max-limit < burst-limit</pre>

That having been said, what is the optimal setting for **burst-threshold**? I recommend setting it at half the max-limit because it is an easy calculation and it satisfies the premise that the **burst-threshold** be less than the **max-limit** as prescribed by the manual.

The final setting required is the burst time. Again, referring back to the manual "The actual duration of burst does not depend on **burst-time** alone. It also depends on the **burst-threshold/burst-limit** ratio and the actual data rate passing through the bursting class." What does that exactly mean? I can demonstrate through the use of a formula. To calculate the burst time, use the following method:

First, calculate the burst ratio as follows:

Burst Ratio = burst-threshold/burst-limit

Then, calculate the burst time:

Burst Time = (Clock Time to Burst) /(Burst Ratio)

To summarize, here is an example.

Given:

We want to create a simple queue with a 256k max-limit and we want to burst to 512k for 5 seconds on the clock.

The refore:

Max-Limit: 256k (given) Burst-Limit: 512k (given) Burst-Threshold: 128k (half the max-limit as recommended above) Burst-Time: 20s

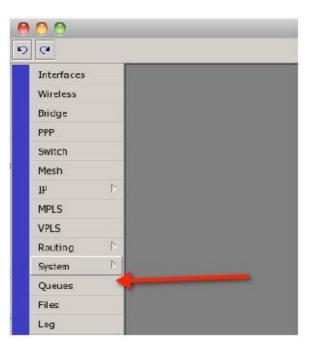
We calculate the burst time as follows:

Burst Ratio = 128k/512k = .25 Burst Time = 5sec / .25 = 20

Therefore, if we set the burst time to 20, we will get the desired 5 second burst. It would be great if the value of burst time was equal to clock time, but as you can see it isn't. The calculation described here is required to get proper queue behavior.

Example – Creating a Simple Queue for Computers in an Office Network

For purposes of this example, we want to limit all computers on our 192.168.1.0/24 network to share a 5 meg allocation of bandwidth. Remember that simple queues with the target address set to a subnet do not allocate the queue amount to each computer in the subnet, instead it is shared by all IP addresses in the subnet as it is consumed. We will learn other queue strategies in future examples to create separate allocations of bandwidth.



1. Click the Queues button to open the Simple Queues list.

2. In the Simple Queues list, click the plus sign to create a new simple queue.

+ -		7 = =	eue Tree Queue New Simple Qu		. 1	3	
3	Name All Traffic	▲ Target	IN THIS PROPERTY AND IN THE OWNER	ed Statistics	Traffic Tota	I Total Statist	
2	E IS Skype		Name	queuet		100 E	Cancel
1	€ VOIP	208.91	Target Address:				🗢 Apply
				🔽 Target Uplo	ad 🗹 Targ	get Download	Disable
			Max Limit:	unlimited	▼ unlimite	ed 🔻 bit	ts/s Comment
			- Burst Burst Limit:	unlimited		ed ∓ bit	ts/s Copy
			Burst Threshold:		▼ unlimite		Demonstra
			Burst Time:		D	5	Reset Counters
			- - Time				Reset All Counters
d 3	lar						Tarch
4 items	01	3 queued					

3. Name the queue something descriptive and set the max limit for upload and download. Note here that if the value you want for upload/download is not in the list, you may simply type it in. Acceptable values are expressed in "k" for kilobits or "M" for megabits but fractional amounts like 1.5M must be expressed in kilobits such as 1500k.

General	Advanc	ed Statistics	Traff	fic Total	Total Sta	tistics	OK
	Name:	LimitToMyNet	work				Cancel
Target A	ddress:	192.168.1.0/24	ŧ			+	Apply
		Target Upl	oad	☑ Targe	t Download	t	Disable
Ma	ax Limit:	5M	₹	5M	Ŧ	bits/s	Comment
Burst Burst Limit: unlimited Burst Threshold: unlimited		Ŧ	unlimited 64k		bits/s	Сору	
		L	Ŧ	128k 256k 512k		bits/s	Remove
Bur	st Time:	0		1M 2M		s	Reset Counters
▼ Tim	e						Reset All Counters
							Torch

4. Once the settings are entered as above, click the OK button to save and the queue is completed.

Example – Creating a Queue for a Destination Host

In this example, we want to limit bandwidth to a site such as www.mikrotik.com. To create the queue, first we must know the IP address of that web host or the range of addresses the host uses. By pinging www.mikrotik.com from a command line, we learn the IP address is 159.148.147.196. Create this queue as follows:

1. Click the Queues button to open the simple queue list.

0	00		
ю	Q		
	Interfaces		
	Wireless		
	Bridge		
	PPP		
	Switch		
	Mesh		
	IP	\triangleright	
	MPLS		
	VPLS		
	Routing	. ♦	
	System	₽	
	Queues		
	Files		
	Log		

2. In the Simple Queues list, click the plus sign to create a new simple queue.

Simple Queues Interface	P = F	eue Tree Queue 1			1		
# Name	/ Target	New Simple Qu	eue				×
3 All Traffic	Target	General Advance	ed Statistics	Traf	fic Total To	tal Statistics	OK
2 🗟 15		Name:	queue1				Cancel
0 🔮 Skype 1 🔮 VOIP	2 08.91	Target Address:	000 00			\$	Apply
			Target Upl	oad	Target Do	wnioad	Disable
		Max Limit:	unlimited	Ŧ	unlimited	∓ bits/s	Comment
		 Burst Burst Limit: 	unlimited	Ŧ	unlimited	∓ bits/s	Сору
		Burst Threshold	unlimited	₹	unlimited	₹ bits/s	Remove
		Burst Time:	0		0	5	Reset Counters
		→ Time					Reset All Counters
4 items	0.6 queued						Torch

Name the queue as you like, and then click the Advanced tab. On the advanced tab, insert the value for the destination address, the IP address for www.mikrotik.com and the bandwidth restrictions you want to impose.

General Adva	inced	Statistics	Traffi	c Total	Total Sta	atistics
000	Terroren					-
P2P:	£					
Packet Marks:						\$
Dst. Address:	148.14	7.196.159				-
Interface:	all					Ŧ
	Target	Upload	т	arget Dov	vnload	
Limit At:	1M		• 1	M		bits/s
Queue Type:	defaul	t-small	Ŧ	iefault-sr	nall 🖣	•
40000 · //PO.						

3. Click OK and all traffic to and from MikroTik.com will be restricted to 1M.

Example – Create a Queue for Local Computers with Burst

In this example, we will use the calculated values from the previous section entitled "Bursting".

1. Click the Queues button to open the Simple Queues list.

0	00		
5	~		
	Interfaces	Î	
	Wireless	1	
	Bridge		
	PPP	Į	
	Switch		
	Mesh		
	IP	P	
	MPLS	Į.	
	VPLS	1	
	Routing	Þ	
	System	1	
	Queues		
	Files		
	Log		

2. In the Simple Queues list, click the plus sign to create a new simple queue.

+ -			New Simple Queue	internet in the	1		
# 3	Name All Traffic	∠ Targe	General Advanced St	tatistics Traff	fic Total Tot	al Statistics	ОК
2	Skype		Name: queu	e1			Cancel
1	L VOIP	2.08.9	Target Address:	- 99		÷	Apply
			🗹 Ta	rget Upload	✓ Target Dov	vnioad	Disable
			Max Limit: unlim		unlimited	∓ bits/s	Comment
			▲ Burst	unlimited T unlimited			Сору
			Burst Limit: Unlim		unlimited	 ▼ bits/s ▼ bits/s 	Remove
			Burst Time: 0		0	s bics/s	Reset Counters
			Time	Reset All Counte			
							Tarch
items	i (0 B queued					

3. Insert the following values in the General tab:

General Advance		ed Statistic	s Traf	fic Total	Total Sta	tistics	OK
Name:		BustingQue	Cancel				
Target Address:		192.168.1.2	Apply				
Max Limit: Burst Burst Limit: Burst Threshold: Burst Time:		☑ Target Up	load	Target Download			Disable
		256k Ŧ		256k Ŧ		bits/s	Comment
		[[1	
		512k	₹	512k 128k	Ŧ	bits/s	
		128k	Ŧ			bits/s	Remove
		20		20		s	Reset Counters
▼ Time						Reset All Counters	
							Torch

The result will be a 512k burst, up or down for a clock period of 5 seconds.

Packet Mangling

When I introduce this topic in my live classes, I typically get a reaction like "Packet mangling? That sound painful." But, don't worry, no packets were harmed in the writing of this chapter.

Seriously though, mangling is a facility that allows us to identify packets and mark them for

later use. With this mark we can do wonderful things like force packets with certain marks to take certain routes, or go through certain queues. One concern of packet mangling is that it can be very CPU intensive if we have to look at every single packet, make a decision whether or not to mark it, and then perform the marking action. Fortunately, there is a method of marking packets that uses an optimized scheme and therefore is much less intense. This method is called the "optimal mangle", named for the fact it optimizes the process and therefore accomplishes the task in the most CPU efficient manner.

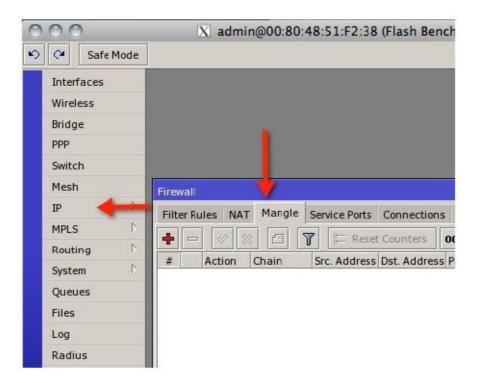
There are two steps to the optimal mangle:

- 1. Identify connections that are flowing the packets we want to mangle.
- 2. Mark the packets.

To demonstrate why this is the most efficient method, I like to use the analogy of a worker in a factory on the final assembly line whose job it is to place a decal on completed products. If there are a large variety of products passing in front of the inspector and his job is to only mark a single product type, he spends a large portion of his time looking for the actual product to be decaled. It is like looking for a needle in a haystack. However, if we sort the products first and only put on his conveyor belt the actual items he is to mark, his efforts are greatly reduced. He only has to apply the decals and does not waste resources looking for the products. The optimal mangle works the same way.

Example – Packet Mangling Using Optimal Mangle

1. To perform the mangle, we create two rules in the IP Firewall list under the Mangle tab.



2. Mangles are performed in a certain place within the routing process and the explanation of each of these places or "chains" as they are called is outside the scope

of this book, however for most mangling operations, the prerouting chain is the place to mangle. In this example, we want to identify all web browsing traffic so we select a minimum of filters on the packet matcher tab. After creating a new rule with the plus sign, set it as follows:

Mangle R	ule <80>				
General	Advanced	Extra	Action	Statistics	
	Chain: [reroutin	g		4
Src.	Address:				•
Dst.	Address:				-
	Protocol:	6 (tcp)		.
	Src. Port:				-
	Dst. Port:	80			-
ä	Any. Port:				-
	P2P:				-

This rule will match all web browsing traffic identified by the fact that it is destined for port 80. The Action tab for this rule is to mark these connections with a mark we have authored ourselves, "WebBrowsingConnections". This mark can be anything, but I like to make it descriptive.

Mangle R	ule <80>				
General	Advanced	Extra	Action	Statistics	
	Action	: mar	k connec	tion	₹
New Con	nection Mark	: Web	Browsing	gConnections	Ŧ
		✓ P	assthrou	igh	

3. Click Ok to save this rule. Now we have narrowed the scope of packets we want to examine greatly by restricting this rule to port 80 connections and then marking that connection with our mangle rule.

4. Next we want to mark the actual packets. We don't want to look at every packet, just those that are a part of connections we have previously identified, so the next rule we create under IP Firewall Mangle looks like this:

angle R	uie <>	- 10 - 22				
General	Advance	d Extra	Action	Statistics		
	Chain:	preroutin	g			1
Src.	Address:					
Dst.	Address:					
	Protocol:					
	Src. Port:					217
	Dst. Port:	8				
- A	Any. Port:					Distriction of
	P2P:					A PERSONAL PROPERTY IN
In. I	Interface:					
Out. I	Interface:	1				Contraction of the local division of the loc
Рас	ket Mark:					- South
Connect	tion Mark:	WebBr	owsingC	onnections	₹	Contraction of the local distance of the loc
Rout	ing Mark:					and and a second
Routi	ng Table:					and the second s
Connect	tion Type:					10000
Connecti	ion State:	8-				

This packet matcher only matches the previously marked connections. The action tab is where we mark the actual packets with our mark "WebBrowsingPackets".

langle R	ule <>				
General	Advanced	Extra	Action	Statistics	
	Action	n: mar	k packet		Ŧ
New	Packet Mark	c Web	Browsing	JPackets	₹
		P	assthrou	ıgh	

Notice I have unchecked the box for "Passthrough". This is important because packets can be marked more than once. It is important to understand that multiple marks do not add. For example if the first rule matches a packet and marks it "AAA" and Passthrough is checked, the packet continues down the mangle chain. If the next rule matches, the packet gets remarked "BBB", not "AAABBB". The marks do not add, they re-mark so the packet will then be marked "BBB'. If Passthrough is unchecked, once a rule matches, the packet leaves the mangle chain.

In summary, packets are identified by connections, the connections marked, and then the packets in those connections are individually marked.

It is important to note that if you have connection tracking off for whatever reason, the optimal

mangle will not work. In that case, simple use one rule to identify the packets and mark them all in the same mangle rule. It will be CPU intensive but it is your only option.

Traffic Prioritization

Often referred to as QoS or Quality of Service, or traffic prioritization, I would rather call this function Queue Prioritization because that is a more descriptive and accurate means of describing the function. To begin, why is prioritization necessary or desired? Consider two types of traffic. The first is a phone call, and the second is a large file download. Since the phone call is real-time, delays in the delivery of the packets containing the voice data (latency) will cause degradation in quality of the sound received. A similar delay in a file download will go unnoticed. Therefore, for the best network performance, it would be desirable for the voice traffic to have priority over the standard data traffic. This prioritization is achieved by carving out "chunks" of bandwidth and reserving them for each type of traffic. Furthermore, by telling the router that the voice queue should be serviced before the "other data" queue, it is possible to ensure that the phone call always gets handled with the highest priority as long as there is bandwidth available to serve it. This is QoS or Quality of Service.

To configure prioritization in RouterOS, it is first necessary to identify the traffic to be prioritized. This is best accomplished using a mangle rule and packet matching the traffic by some means. In the previous example, a simple method of identifying Voice Over IP or VoIP traffic is by destination IP address. If you are the operator of a VoIP gateway or PBX, you can simply packet match traffic to and from the IP address of your VoIP devices and mangle it with some mark. Secondly, a queue is created for the VoIP traffic with a bandwidth allocation and a high priority.

In RouterOS, queues are prioritized based on a numerical value from 1 to 8 where 1 is the highest priority and 8 is the lowest. By default, simple queues are created with a priority of 8. Queues with a higher priority are filled before queues with lower priority.

Once traffic has been identified with a mangle rule or rules and at least two queues created and priorities set, traffic through the router will now be handled based on priority. It is important that traffic prioritization is local to the router and does not carry throughout the network.

For Further Study: QOS

There is a type of traffic prioritization that is carried by the packet throughout the network, but that is a topic for advanced study. If you want to learn more about this type of QOS, I suggest you research setting the "DSCP bit" or Differentiated Services Code Point bit of an IP packet. This bit can be set by many VoIP devices or by a mangle rule in RouterOS and is carried throughout the network. Queues can then be created with priority for packets identified by the DSCP bit and thereby provide a much more advanced QoS system.

Example – Queue Priority for VoIP Traffic

In this example, we are a service provider and we desire to prioritize VoIP traffic to and from our imaginary VoIP gateway which is located at IP address 212.13.14.2. There is one router between our clients and the VoIP gateway and that is where we will create the QoS system

1. To begin, we want to create a Mangle Rule for traffic destined for the VoIP gateway and traffic from the VoIP gateway. We will use the technique previously discussed for marking connections first and then marking packets. This is done with a mangle rules as follows:

angle	Rule <212.13.14	k2>	
General	Advanced Extra	a Action Statistics	
	Chain: prerout	ing	
Src.	Address: 212.	13.14.2	
Dst.	Address:		
	Protocol:		-
	Src. Port		
	Dst. Port		

This rule matches packets coming from our VoIP gateway.

New Connection Mark: VOIP	General Adva	inced Ext	ra Action	Statistics	
vew connection mark. Vote		Action: n	nark connec	tion	
Destherush	New Connection Mark:		OIP		-
Passiliougn			Passthrou	ıgh	

On the action tab, we are marking these connections with the connection mark "VoIP".

2. Next, we create a rule for traffic in the opposite direction, that is, traffic going to the VoIP gateway.

Seneral Advanced Extra Action Statistics	
Chain: prerouting	1
Src. Address:	
Dst. Address: 212.13.142	
Protocol:	
Sirc. Port:	
Dst. Port	
Any, Port.	

The Action will be the same, mark the connection.

General	Advanced	Extra Action	Statistics	
	Action	mark connect	ion	
New Connection Mark:		VOIP		
		✓ Passthroug	gh	

3. The last mangle rule will match the connection mark and then mark the actual VoIP packets.

General	Advanced	Extra	Action	Statistics	
	Chain: p	reroutin	g		×
Src.	Address:				
Dst.	Address:				
	Protocol:				
	Src. Port				*
	Dst. Port.				· ·
	Any. Port:				*
	P2P:				
In.	Interface:				
Out.	Interface:				
Pac	:ket Mark:				-
Connect	tion Mark:	VOIP			Ŧ
Rout	ing Mark:				
34	tule <>				
neral	Advanced	Extra	Action	Statistics	
	Action	n: mark	packet		
New	Packet Mark	20			
		P	assthrou	gh	

Note that we uncheck "Passthrough" so that the packets will not get remarked.

4. Next we create two queues, one for VoIP and one for everything else. In this example we have a T1 connection, or approximately 1.5 megabits of bandwidth. We choose to allocate 512k for VoIP and the remainder for all other traffic.

The queues are created as follows:

General	Advance	d Statistics	Traffic	Total	Total Statistics	
	Name:	VOIP Traffic				
Target A	ddress:					\$
		 Target Uplo 	ad	🗹 Та	arget Download	
M	ax Limit:	512k	₹	512k	Ŧ	bits/s
▲ Burs	st					
Bur	st Limit:	unlimited	Ŧ	unlin	nited 🔻	bits/s
Burst Th	reshold:	unlimited	₹	unlin	nited Ŧ	bits/s
	st Time:			0		s

Note that we are identifying traffic with the packet mark "VoIP" and setting this queue priority to 1.

General Adva	nced	Statistics	Traffic	Total	Total Statistics		
P2P:	L					-	
Packet Marks:	VOIP	<u>.</u>				Ŧ \$	
Dst. Address:						-	
Interface:	all						
	Targe	t Upload		Target	Download		
Limit At:	unlim	ited	Ŧ	unlimi	ted 🔻	bits/	
Queue Type:	defa	ult-small	Ŧ	defau	ilt-small	5	
Parent:	none					1	

5. Finally, we need a queue for all other traffic and here we can make use of a little know feature, the packet mark "no-mark". If a packet is not mangled, it is still actually marked with the mark "no-mark". So, even without a mangle rule for all other traffic, we can queue based on this unmarked status of mark "no-mark".

eneral Advanc		ed	Statistics	Traffic	Total	Total Stat	istics	
	Name:	All	Other Traffi	ic				
Target A	ddress:							\$
			Target Uplo	ad	🗹 та	arget Down	load	
Max Limit:		1M		▼ 1M			Ŧ	bits/s
▲ Burs	st							
Bur	st Limit:	un	limited	₹	▼ unlimited		Ŧ	bits/s
Burst Th	reshold:	un	unlimited		unlimited		₹	bits/s
Bur	st Time:	0	0			0		
▼ Tim	e							

General	Advanced	Statistics	Traffic	Total	Total Statistics	
	P2P:					-
Packet M	arks: no-m	ark				Ŧ
Dst. Add	ress:					-
Inter	face: all					•
	Targe	et Upload		Target	Download	
Lim	it At: unlin	nited	₹	unlimi	ted	➡ bits/s
Queue	Type: defa	ult-small	Ŧ	defau	ılt-small	₹
Pa	rent: none	1				•
Dei	ority: 8					

The preceeding QoS setup is very effective and fairly easy to configure.

PCQ – Per Connection Queuing

As previously discussed, simple queues are fast and easy but not very efficient or scalable in their design and operation. For the best balance between resource efficiency, scalability and ease of configuration, I would like to offer the application of PCQ with a simple queue.

First, what is PCQ ? Per Connection Queuing is the queuing discipline that can be used to dynamically divide streams of traffic into upload and download on a per host basis. In addition, once identified and divided, the traffic can be queued. One method allocates a predetermined amount of bandwidth per user with the caveat that once the total available bandwidth is met and exceeded, the bandwidth will then be shared equally. Another method is to create an allocation of bandwidth for all users to be shared equally. This may seem confusing so let's explore some scenarios.

In the first scenario, we have a 512k allocation of bandwidth for our users. We want to divide

it amongst them but we want to limit each user to no more than 128k. Graphically, this scenario is demonstrated using this illustration:

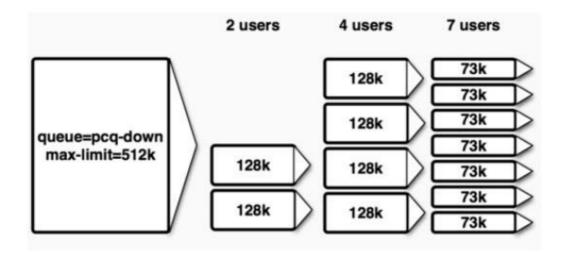


Figure 6 - PCQ Behavior¹

As you can see, with 4 active users downloading, everyone gets their allocation of 128k. Once we exceed our total allocation of 512k and have 7 active users downloading, the total bandwidth per user drops to 73k.

In the second scenario, we are not imposing any limits until the total allocation of bandwidth is exceeded and then we will share all available bandwidth between all active users. Note, when I say active users, I mean network hosts that are actively downloading or uploading, that is, those hosts for which traffic is currently flowing.

Consider the following diagram:

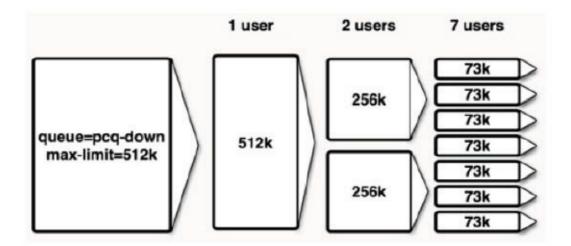


Figure 7 - PCQ Behavior¹

If only one user is downloading, they get the full 512k allocation but two users will share it equally.

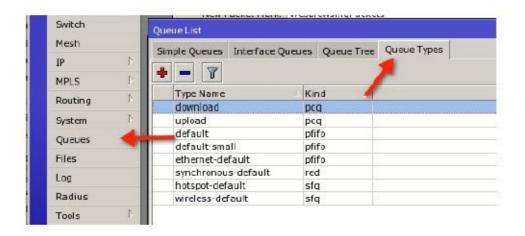
Which scenario do you choose? The second scenario, in my opinion will generate the most support calls to the IT department because one user that comes in every morning a half hour

before the rest of the office will get an unrealistic expectation about the speed of the Internet connection and once other users get to work, he or she will call IT and complain that the network slows every day around 8:30 am. This scenario is likely worth some consideration before you choose a method.

Example – Using PCQ with a Simple Queue, One Limit to All

The following example demonstrates the easiest way to get started with PCQ's. It is configured by creating a custom queue type that is a PCQ, and applying that to a simple queue. The simple queue controls the bandwidth allocation and identifies the traffic to be queued, while the PCQ type distributes the bandwidth to the targets. With this example you can experience the scalability of PCQ's using features you have already learned in this book.

1. The first step is to create the custom queue type of upload and download. Remember, PCQ divides traffic using classifiers that determine if it is upload or download so we need two customer queue types. These are created under the Queues button and then Queue Types.



2. Here we create two queues and name them "upload" and "download". For the upload queue, notice we set the Classifier to "Src. Address". The rationale is that if traffic is coming from a host, that host is uploading.

-	ple Queues Interface Qu		10 M		
T			Queue Type <uploada< th=""><th></th><th></th></uploada<>		
1	Type Name	Kind		12/1	
-	download	pcq	Type Name:	upload	ОК
	upload	pcq	Kind:	pcq	
	default default-small	pfifo		14 JA	Carreer
	ethemet-default	přířo přířo	Rate:	12.94	Apply
	synchronous-default	red	Marc.	1200	
2	hotspot-default	sfq	Limit:	50	Сору
	wirdess-default	sfq	Total Limit:	2000	Remove
			Burst Rate:	· · · · · ·	•
			Burst Rate: Burst Threshold: Burst Time: Classifier		• •
			Burst Threshold:		- -
8 Ite	ms (1 selected)		Burst Threshold: Burst Time: Classifier	00:00:10	-
	ems (1 selected)		Burst Threshold: Burst Time: Classifier Src. Address	D0: 00:10 Dst. Address Dst. Port	• •
	ems (1 selected).		Burst Threshold: Burst Time: Classifier Src. Address Src. Port	00:00:10 Dst. Address Dst. Port 32	• • -
8 Ite	ems (1 selected)		Burst Threshold: Burst Time: Classifier I Src. Address Src. Address Mask: Src. Address Mask:	00:00:10 Dst. Address Dst. Port 22 22	

3. For download, pick "Dst. Address" for the same reason. The Rate setting is the maximum amount of bandwidth each host will receive. If we leave the Rate at "0", there will be no per user rate and everyone will share the available bandwidth equally. This is the only difference between configuring the two PCQ scenarios.

ueue Type <downloa< th=""><th>ad></th><th></th></downloa<>	ad>	
Type Name:	download	ОК
Kind:	pcq Ŧ	Cancel
Rate:	128k	Apply
Limit:	50	Сору
Total Limit:	2000	Remove
Burst Rate:		
Burst Threshold:	· · ·	
Burst Time: - Classifier	00:00:10	
Src. Address	Dst. Address	
Src. Address Mask:	32	
Dst. Address Mask:	32	
Src. Address6 Mask:	64	
Dst. Address6 Mask:	64	

4. Next, we create a simple queue that will identify the hosts to be queued. In this case, we want to identify all traffic to all hosts on our subnet using the Target address of 192.168.1.0/24 and allocate a maximum of 512k for all traffic.

	Queues	General Advance	ed Statistics	Traffic	Total	Total Statistics		
+ -		Name:	OneLimitToAll				112-	
#	Name	Taxaat & dalamaa	102 168 1 0/24					
0	/ ∰ User. / ∰ User.	Target Address:	192.168.1.0/24				_	
2	₫ User,	-	Taract Hale			wast Download		
3	2 User		✓ Target Uplo			arget Download		
4	B User	Max Limit:	512k	Ŧ	512k		Ŧ	bits/
5	🔒 OneL	Burst			-			
		Burst Limit:	unlimited	Ŧ	unlim	nited	Ŧ	bits/
		Burst Threshold:	unlimited	Ŧ	unlim	nited	Ŧ	bits/
		Burst Time:	0		0			s
								12
		Burst Time:	0		0		- 24	S

5. On the Advanced tab, we set the queue type to "upload" and "download", the names of the two custom PCQ queues we recently created. That is all that is required to create the one limit to all strategy using PCQ.

Switch	Queue List		
Mesh IP ♪	Simple Queues Interface	Queues Queue Tree	Queue Types
MPLS D	+ - 7		7
Routing D	Type Name download	Kind A	
System 🖹	upload	pcq	
Queues 🧹	derault	ptito	
Queues	default-small	pfifo	
Files	ethernet-default	pfifo	
Log	synchronous-default	red	
LUY	hotspot-default	stq	
Radius	wireless-default	sfq	
Tools 1			

Using mangle can further extend this example. First create pcq queues and simple queues for each package of bandwidth you want to make available to hosts, just like in this example. Then create mangles that identify each class of customer by IP address or subnet.

With three packages of bandwidth, you will only need three simple queues, six custom queues, and six mangle rules to queue traffic to thousands of hosts. This is a very manageable, scalable, and efficient way to limit traffic.

Chapter 11 – Tools

In my opinion, one of the things that truly separates RouterOS from all the other routing systems I have worked with is the availability of a large selection of very functional tools. I would venture to say that no other dedicated routing system has this large a selection of network tools contained within the operating system. We will take a look at several of the more commonly used tools and how they can be used to maintain, test, and troubleshoot your network.

Bandwidth Test Utility

The Bandwidth Test utility's function is to test in real time the performance of a link between two devices. The tool is designed as a client server model and the link can be Ethernet or wireless. Best of all, the test can be conducted between two RouterOS devices or between a Windows PC and a RouterOS device or even between two Windows PC's.

As described previously, the tool is designed as two pieces, a client and a server. The client sends traffic to the server to create an upload test and the server sends traffic back to test the download speed. All results are displayed in real time and there are numerous configurable options. It should be noted that the tool itself requires CPU cycles and resources so, to accurately test a link, simply running the tool on the two endpoints of the link will not give accurate results. The most accurate way to test a link is to use two additional routers as the testing endpoints and test through the two link endpoints in a fashion similar to the following illustration created using the MikroTik Dude:



Figure 8 - Bandwidth Test Layout

The best way to learn to use the bandwidth test tool is through some examples. In this example, we will do a simple test between two RouterBOARDs. As previously discussed, this is not the most accurate way to conduct a test but will simply demonstrate the actual use of the tool.

Example - Bandwidth Test Utility

1. The server portion requires little configuration and are found in the Tools menu under BTest Server.

Log	
Radius	
Tools D	BTest Server
New Terminal	Bandwidth Test
MetaROUTER	Email
Make Supout.rif	Flood Ping
Manual	Graphing
Exit	IP Scan
	MAC Server
	Netwatch
	Packet Sniffer
	Ping
	Ping Speed
	Telnet
	Torch
	Traceroute
	Traffic Monitor

2. Once the server list is opened, the only configuration is to click "enabled" and make a decision on "Authenticate". Authenticate simply means the client has to supply a user name and password for a valid router user to run the test.

T BTe:	st Server Settings		Fi	nd
Address	A Protocol D	Direction	User	-
BTes	t Server Settir	nas		
BTes	t Server Settir		abled	
BTes	t Server Settir	🗹 En	abled	ОК
BTes	t Server Settir	🗹 En	abled thenticate	OK
	t Server Settin ate UDP Ports Fro	 ✓ En ✓ Au 		-

3. When you close the BTest Server Settings window, the BTest Server list shows any clients that may be running a test so it is empty until a test is started.

4. Once the server end is set up, the client router clicks the Bandwidth Test to open the following dialog box:

Test To:	10.0.1.1		Start
Protocol:	• udp	C tcp	Stop
Local UDP Tx Size:	1500		
Remote UDP Tx Size:	1500		Close
Direction:	both	Ŧ	
CP Connection Count:	20		
Local Tx Speed:		▼ bps	
Remote Tx Speed:		🗸 bps	
User:	admin	•	
Password:	•••••	•	
Tx/Rx 10s Average:	6.9 Mbps/4	94.1 kbps	
Tx/Rx Average:	6.9 Mbps/4	94.1 kbps	
Tx: 7.6 Mbps Rx: 71.9 kbps			

The required items here are a "Test To" IP address of the server, a user name, and password for authentication as previously configured. Everything else is optional, descriptive of its function, and selectable by the user.

Monitoring Tools

In the beginning of this chapter I said that in my opinion, one of the things that really separates RouterOS from all the other operating systems out there is the availability of a large selection of very functional tools. The area monitoring is no different. There is no other routing system that I know of, where you can you get such advanced real time traffic monitoring tools as well as such detailed historical data.

The interface traffic monitor is a real time graph that is available for every interface in RouterOS. It is accessible within the properties of an interface on a tab entitled "Traffic".

General	Ethernet	Status Tra	ffic	OK
т	x/Rx Rate:	63.0 kbps	/ 27.4 kbps	Cancel
Tx/Rx Pa	cket Rate:	16 p/s	/ 17 p/s	Apply
T	v/Rx Bytes:	56.6 GiB	/ 31.4 GiB	Disable
Tx/R	x Packets:	90 141 644	/ 83 096 569	Comment
Тх	/Rx Drops:	0	/ 0	
Тх	/Rx Errors:	0	/ 0	Torch
	63.0 kbps 27.4 kbps]		
	acket: 16 acket: 17		/	

In the interface traffic monitor, traffic passing through the interface is measured and displayed graphically using directional flow identifiers for Transmit (Tx) and Receive (Rx) rates as well as a lower level display of packets per second. In addition, Tx and Rx errors are displayed for the interface thereby giving the technician a quick and simple view of the traffic passing through the interface. The interface traffic monitor is found on all interfaces by right clicking the interface in the Interfaces list, selecting Properties, and clicking the Traffic tab.

Torch

The operation of the Torch tool was described on page 115.

Example – Using Torch to Troubleshoot "Slow" Networks

This particular example is more of a story and application rather than a step-by-step guide as the actual steps are simple, you just click the Tools menu and select Torch. This is a classic example of how Torch and RouterOS can make the operation of a provider network so much simpler and give your technicians fingertip access to diagnostic power that the telecoms only have at their highest level of IP network engineering.

The scenario is simple and common for an Internet service provider. A customer calls in and complains their Internet connection is "slow". "Slow" is a relative term and really makes the possibility of ending this call in a manner that is satisfactory to the customer a real challenge. In addition, it has been my experience that a service provider can give excellent service for years and when there is one "hiccup", regardless of the responsible party, the perception from the consumer is that "the service has always been terrible and has never worked right".

Remembering that often perception is reality to our valued customers, we are forced to troubleshoot a problem that in reality is not even a "problem" and thereby defend our honor, or in this case our network. Typically when I begin to drill down with the customer to define how long the period of "terrible" has lasted, we find that the service has in reality been great for years but today they are frustrated because it isn't working correctly or at least it hasn't for the last ten minutes and everything was rosy prior to that and so on, but then I digress. So in this scenario, the first tool I launch is Torch on the customer-facing interface. What I typically find is something that looks like this:

Basic						- Filters -					Start
Interface	etl	her1			Ŧ	Src. Addre	ess: 0.0.0.0/	0			Stop
ntry Timeout	00	:00:03			s	Dst. Addre	ess: 0.0.0.0/	0			Close
Collect	2012					Proto	col: any				Ŧ
 Src. Addr Dst. Addr 	222		Protocol Port			P	ort any				Ŧ
	2022										and the second se
VLAN Id						VLAN	Id any]	7
VLAN Id						VLAN	Id any]	Find
	ot	Src. Address	Src. Port		Dst. Addre			TxRate ∇	RxRate		
Eth Pr		Src. Address 10.0.25.243			Dst. Addre 4 23.45.25	css Dst.		Tx Rate 77	and the second se	Tx Pack	Find Rx Pack
Eth Pr 6	(t		1	52445		ess Dst. 4	Port	6.3 Mbps	196.4 kbps	Tx Pack 580 3	Find Rx Pack 419 6
Eth Pr 6 6	(t (t	10.0.25.243		52445 52227	4.23.45.25	css Dst. 4 82	Port 80 (http)	6.3 Mbps 9.7 kbps	196.4 kbps 4.1 kbps	Tx Pack 580 3 3	Find Rx Pack 419 6 3
Eth Pr 6 6 6	(t (t (t	10.0.25.243 10.0.25.243		52445 52227 42559	4.23.45.25 10.0.1.1	ess Dst. 4 82 4	Port 80 (http) 91 (winbox)	6.3 Mbps 9.7 kbps	196.4 kbps 4.1 kbps 1426 bps	Tx Pack 580 3 3	Find Rx Pack 419 6
Eth Pr 6 6 6 6	(t (t (t	10.0.25.243 10.0.25.243 10.0.25.233		52445 52227 42559 49191	4.23.45.25 10.0.1.1 216.81.36.	css Dst. 4 82 4 4 4.42	Port 80 (http) 91 (winbox) 2210	6.3 Mbps 9.7 kbps 7.8 kbps	196.4 kbps 4.1 kbps 1426 bps 15.1 kbps	Tx Pack 580 3 3 2 9	Find Rx Pack 419 6 3 2
6 6 6 6	(t (t (t (t	10.0.25.243 10.0.25.243 10.0.25.233 10.0.25.234		52445 52227 42559 49191 52177	4.23.45.25 10.0.1.1 216.81.36. 69.171.224	css Dst. 4 82 4 4 4.42 1 164 338	Port 80 (http) 91 (winbox) 2210 80 (http)	6.3 Mbps 9.7 kbps 7.8 kbps 6.6 kbps	196.4 kbps 4.1 kbps 1426 bps 15.1 kbps 3.8 kbps	Tx Pack 580 3 3 2 9	Find Rx Pack 419 6 3 2 9

What I have done in this view is to click on the Tx Rate column to sort the traffic based on the highest rate first. As you can see, this customer is maintaining a 6.3 Mbps stream to an IP address of 10.0.25.243. It doesn't take long to explain to a customer that if they are paying for a 6 meg connection and they are streaming more than 6 megs, they are getting their money's worth. In addition, you get the opportunity to help them play detective or "informed tech parent", going through the home checking the IP address of each computer to determine who is streaming a movie (with parental permission or without). Torch gives you a looking glass into the customer's private IP network behind their firewall and empowers you to give quantitate data to the customer that proves the quality and value of the service they are buying.

Traffic Graphing

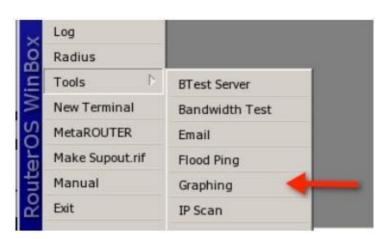
In a perfect world, all of our customers would be conservative with the network resources to which they have access and decrease their usage during peak times and schedule their downloads during periods of lowest activity. Obviously this is not the way it usually works. Many times, as service providers, we are challenged by our clients who believe they are not getting what they have paid for with regard to bandwidth.

It is often a challenge to explain to a customer how we know they are using all the bandwith they are paying for. Fortunately, a picture paints a thousand words and RouterOS offers such a picture when it comes to bandwidth usage.

Graphing is a method of recording the amount of traffic that passes through an interface over time in an easy to read chart which can be printed or the web link given to a client for his or

her own inspection. The graphs can be stored on the device's storage. Although the most common usage is for graphing bandwidth, it can also graph resources such as CPU utilization, memory and disk usage to name a few.

Graphing consists of two parts, the collection of the raw data and the viewing of the compiled data. First, the graph collection is configured in the device and then the graphs become available through WinBox or the web interface.



The configuration of graphs is found under Tools and Graphing.

The last three tabs display any graphing rules that have been configured, and by default there are none.

		Resource Rules		Queue o apris	Resource Graphs
7					4
Interface	A		T		

The first three tabs entitled "Rules" are where you configure the items to be graphed. The default when creating a new resource is "all", which is an easy rule to create but not very selective. There is also the option to limit the hosts that can view the graphs through the web browser interface to a single IP address or a subnet. Limiting to more than one subnet would be better served by using firewall filter rules as the restriction allowed in graphing is meant to be quick and easy but again is very limited in scope to a single host or a single subnet.

Once you are creating graphs, they can be stored in memory or on disk as configured in your rules you create. They can then be viewed in WinBox or by web browsing to the IP address of your router and clicking the Graphs button.

Graphs are great. They are easy to configure and a quick way to prove to a client or yourself that they are using the bandwidth they are buying.

Example – Configure a Graph for all Users in a Subnet

This is quick and easy way to determine whom the "bandwidth hogs" are on your local

network. It involves both Queues and Graphs, however, the purposes of the queues here is not to limit bandwidth but merely to provide a mechanism to measure bandwidth.

The fastest way to create the queues is to use an Excel spreadsheet with its ability to fill rows of cells with consecutive numbers easily to create a script, and then pasting or importing the script into RouterOS. If you aren't comfortable with this method, you can create the queues manually.

1. Create a simple queue for each host IP address in your local subnet. In the case of a /24, that is 253 queues assuming you want to log bandwidth to every single one excluding the default gateway address.

2. Do not apply a bandwidth limit in the queue. Instead, simply create a queue with a target address of each IP address. Each queue should look like this:

General	Advanc	ed Statistics	Trafi	fic Total	Total Sta	tistics	OK
	Name:	UserAtIPadd	ress2				Cancel
Target A	ddress:	192.168.2.2				+	Apply
		🗹 Target Up	load	🗹 Targe	t Downica	t	Disable
M	ax Limit:	unlimited	Ŧ	unlimited	Ŧ	bits/s	Comment
A Burs						i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	Сору
	st Limit:	unlimited	Ŧ	unlimited			Remove
Jurst Th	reshold:	unlimited	Ŧ	unlimited	. ∓	bits/s	
Bur	st Time:	0		0		s	Reset Counters
▼- Tim	e						Reset All Counters
							Torch

3. In Tools Graphing, create a new rule to graph all queues like this:

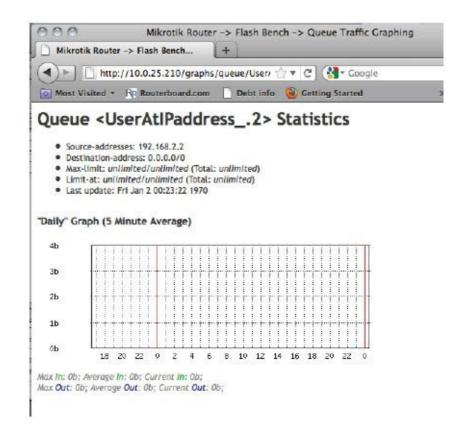
Raphing		
Interface Rules Queue Rules	Resource Rules Interface Graphs	Queue Graph:
Simple Queue 🛛 Allow Add	ress Store on D Allow Tar	
New Queue	Graphing Rule	
Simple Que	ue: all ∓	OK
Allow Addre	ss: 0.0.0.0/0	Cancel
	 Store on Disk Allow Target 	Apply
		Сору
		Remove

4. Now, when I web browse to the router IP address I can click the Graphs button.



On the graphs page, I will see a list of graphs and a resulting graph for each queue I have created, which in this case will equate to one graph per user on the network. Again, using a script will make the production of a large number of queues very quickly.





This method is quick and easy to configure and provides a lot of valuable data. For the html savvy user, it would be quite easy to create a single html web page that included (the <iframe> tag would be a good method to do this) one graph for each user on the network all on one page for quick and easy analysis.

SNMP – Simple Network Management Protocol

SNMP is a standard Internet protocol to provide management of devices on IP networks. In its simplest terms, SNMP provides a way to get useful information about the performance of a device and then use that in a meaningful way like producing graphs and charts and recording performance over a historical period.

In RouterOS, it is found through the IP button and then selecting SNMP. There, by default, you will see an SNMP string that is configured with the name "public". For security, you should remove this entry and configure your own SNMP community string that is a bit tougher for someone to guess and possibly use in some way to exploit your device. Although not common, a good system administrator is always on the watch for ways hackers can exploit his or her network.

By default, SNMP is turned off and can be turned on by clicking the SNMP Settings button and enabling it. Other information can be added as desired and may be used for certain programs that read SNMP information.

If you are using any programs to poll SNMP data from your routers then by all means configure it appropriately, otherwise there is no need to turn it on or make any changes.

Chapter 12 – Local Area Networks

The LAN or the Local Area Network is a technical term for the network topology that is used in our home, our office, or the campus on which we operate. The attributes that differentiate the LAN from its neighbor the WAN or Wide Area Network are typically higher throughput rates, closer proximity of hosts and the sharing of a common broadcast domain. A broadcast domain is a segment of a computer network where all hosts can communicate directly with each other by broadcast on the data link layer or Layer 2 of the OSI model. Broadcast domains are separated by Layer 3 devices such as routers or Layer 3 switches. In summary, if two computers are connected to the same Layer 2 switch, they are on the same broadcast domain and they are certainly on the same LAN.

Thus far we have been working under the assumption that you have at least a basic understanding of the OSI model. To ensure we are using terms and phrases you are familiar with, I would like to offer some foundation.

Briefly stated, the OSI model defines the framework of our modern IP networks. It is based on a layered topology with seven distinct layers. In this book we are only concerned with the first three layers.

Layer 1 – **The physical layer**. This is the cable, the fiber, or the wireless media we use to connect two or more hosts together. It is not intelligent but nevertheless it is necessary.

Layer 2 – **The data link layer**. In this layer, things become slightly more abstract, however there is still some firm ground so let me explain. Every network device comes from its manufacturer with a hard coded "serial number" that identifies it to other devices. This number is called the MAC address or Media Access Control address. The format is something like "00:0C:42:CE:05:1D". Layer 2 network switches understand MAC addresses and not much more. Their job is to pass packets around based on MAC addresses and because their scope of focus is limited to the MAC address, they can do that very quickly and efficiently.

Layer 3 – **The network layer**. Now we have reached the heart of an IP network, the network layer. This layer is where routers operate and where IP addresses live. The network layer is even more abstract and dynamic than the data link layer because IP addresses can be assigned to interfaces, changed, or moved to other interfaces. This makes it the most dynamic of the first three layers.

ARP

You can see from this brief description that each of these layers is very unique, distinct, and separate from one another, but to hold them together as a system we need some "glue". ARP or Address Resolution Protocol is the "glue" that holds together two layers of the OSI model, Layer 2 and Layer 3. The ARP protocol creates a table on the router, which is nothing more than a lookup table, to tie together the MAC address of other hosts on the LAN with their respective IP addresses.

In RouterOS, the ARP table is found by selecting the IP button and the ARP menu.

Mesh			
IP 1:	ARP	4	
MPLS D	Accounting	ARP List	×
Rauting 👘	Addresses	+ - 2 8 E Y Find	
System 🗈	DHCP Client	IP Address MAC Address Interface	-
Queue:	DHCP Relay	D 🗇 10.0.25.1 00:00:42:77:02:32 ether4-slave-local	
Fles	DHCP Server		
.og	DNS		
Padius	Firewall		
fools 🗠	Hotspot		
lew Terminal	IPsec		
MetaROUTER	Neighbors		
Make Supout iř	Packing		
Manual	Pool		
Exit	Routes		
	SNMP		
	Services	1 item	

In this ARP table, we currently have one entry for an IP address of 10.0.25.1 with a MAC address of 00:0C:42:77:02:32. The letter "D" next to the entry designates that the entry was created dynamically. ARP is one of those protocols that just works, so we typically ignore it.

Although ARP entries are normally created automatically (dynamically without our intervention), we can force RouterOS to only use static ARP entries. To make a dynamically created entry in the ARP Table above static, simply double click it and click the button entitled "Make Static". To ensure that no more ARP entries are created, the process is less than intuitive; you actually configure through the interface where the ARP entries are being created and set the interface to "reply-only". No more APR entries will be created.

Interfaces	Interface <ether1-gat< th=""><th colspan="5">ateway></th></ether1-gat<>	ateway>				
Wireless	General Ethernet	Status Overall Stats Rx Stats				
Bridge	Name	ether1-gateway				
PPP						
Switch	Type:	Ethernet				
Mesh	MTU:	1500				
IP D	L2 MTU:	1600				
MPLS D	Max L2 MTU:					
Routing D	MAC Address:	00:0C:42:CE:05:18				
System D	ARP:	reply-only				
Queues		an data star da				

The effect here is that when set to "reply-only", RouterOS no longer creates ARP entries in its table, and instead only replies to other hosts' ARP requests.

Caution: Do not set the interface to ARP "disabled" or you will lose access through that interface.

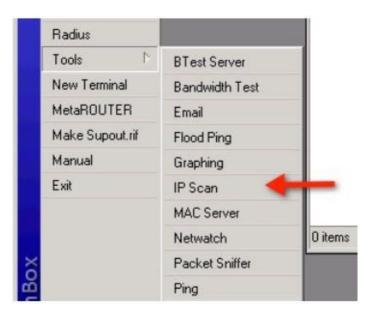
Why would you want to set ARP to "reply-only" and create static ARP entries for every host

on your network? Did you read the second part of that question "create static ARP entries for every host on your network"? That is important because if you do not create static ARP entries for every host on your network, this router will not be able to communicate with them. ARP is the glue that binds Layer 2 to Layer 3 so without it, communication stops. The answer to the question is that using static ARP entries is not a common thing, however, if you want to increase the level of security in your LAN, then static ARP will do that. By that, I mean, if a new host is brought onto the LAN, the existing hosts will not have static ARP entries for the new host so they will not communicate with it and now the LAN is arguably more secure.

Example – Create a LAN that Requires Static ARP

This example is really meant to be an application that teaches a concept, not a recommended practice. To switch your network to static ARP, first you must create a static ARP entry for every host on your LAN on every host on your LAN. This could be a big task but RouterOS makes it easy.

1. Using the IP Scan tool, scan your LAN subnet. This will cause ARP to create an ARP entry for every host it discovers. Remember that ARP entries expire and flush after some period of time so this has to be done quickly.



The tool only requires your subnet be entered and click Start.

Interface:						•	Start	
Address Range:	10.0.	25.0/24				*	Stop	
							Close	
							New Win	idow
Address	L	MAC Address	Time (ms)	DNS	SNMP	1	Netbios	
10.0.25.1		00.00:42:77:02:32	0	58				
10.0.25.2		00:30:18:BC:3F:33	1	companyweb				
10.0.25.3			1					

2. ARP entries will be created for each host that replies to the IP Scan probe.

+		T		Find
	IP Address	MAC Address	Interface	
D	10.0.25.1	00:0C:42:77:02:32	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.2	00:30:1B:BC:3F:33	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.203	60:2A:D0:FF:1B:7C	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.207	00:11:43:AC:F9:31	ether4-slave-local	
D	□ 10.0.25.210	00:80:48:51:F2:38	ether4-slave-local	
D	□ 10.0.25.220	00:0C:42:49:8A:3F	ether4-slave-local	
D	□ 10.0.25.225	00:08:5D:25:F3:1C	ether4-slave-local	
D	□ 10.0.25.226	00:08:5D:21:DA:9D	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.227	00:08:5D:11:94:EC	ether4-slave-local	
D	□ 10.0.25.228	00:0C:42:0F:E7:63	ether4-slave-local	
D	□ 10.0.25.233	00:24:8C:2F:4F:2F	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.234	00:24:E8:08:50:A1	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.235	00:08:5D:1A:87:8C	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.236	00:08:5D:21:DA:9B	ether4-slave-local	
D	□ 10.0.25.237	00:13:72:AD:4C:57	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.241	68:7F:74:57:0C:D9	ether4-slave-local	
D	□ 10.0.25.251	00:26:B0:F2:07:0E	ether4-slave-local	

3. Once the scan has completed, click IP button in WinBox and select ARP. In the ARP list, click the top entry, hold the shift key and click the bottom entry in the list to select everything in the ARP table, right click and select "Make Static".

÷	- / ×	8			Find
L,	IP Address	A MAC Addres	35	Interface	
D	□ 10.0.25.1	00:0C:42:77	1:02:32	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.2	00:30:1B:B0	C:3F:33	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.203	60:2A:D0:FF	F:1B:7C	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.207	00:11:43:A0	CF9:31	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.210	00:80:48:51	:F2:38	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.220	00:00:42:49):84:3F	ether4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.225	Show Categor	ries	ther4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.226	Detail Mode		ther4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.227	Inline Commer	ate	ther4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.228	Time Comme	ics	ther4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.233	Show Columns	ș S	ther4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.234		8	-ther4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.235	Find	Ctrl+F	ther4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.236	Find Next	Ctrl+G	ther4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.237	and a second second	1.500 2.577.55	ther4-slave-local	
D	10.0.25.241	Select All	Ctrl+A	ther4-slave-local	
D	□ 10.0.25.251	Add	A	sther4-slave-local	
		Remove	R		
17 it	tems (17 selected)	Make Static Ping MAC Ping Tehet	+		
		MAC Telnet		24:E8:08:50:A1	
		Torch		08:5D:1A:87:8C	1

4. Finally, change the interface connected to the LAN to ARP "reply-only".

Interfaces		Interface -	Interface <ether1-gateway></ether1-gateway>						
Wireless		General	Ethernet	Status	Overall Stats	Rx Stats			
Bridge			Name:	ether1-	natawan		1		
PPP									
Switch	Switch		Туре:	Etherne	Ethernet				
Mesh			MTU:	1500			1473		
IP	Þ		L2 MTU:	1600			-		
MPLS	Þ	Ма	x L2 MTU:						
Routing	1	MA	C Address:	00:0C:4	2:CE:05:18				
System	Þ	_	ARP:	reply-or	ıly		•		
Queues			-		-				

5. That is it. Repeat for every router on your LAN and now a new host brought onto the LAN will not be able to communicate with these devices because they lack an ARP entry for the new host. Remember, changing the IP on a host with a static ARP entry will prevent it from working on the network.

DNS

DNS or Domain Name Service refers to the protocol that binds names to IP addresses. Without DNS, your computer would not be able to web browse to www.google.com as it must first resolve(convert) that name to an IP address. RouterOS has the ability to store or cache DNS requests locally, thereby reducing the amount of requests it has to send across the Internet connection and thereby speed up a user's experience.

Example – Configure DNS Client and Caching DNS Server

This example is fairly simple, so I have combined both functions.

1. Click on IP and select DNS. Click the Settings button and add at least one DNS server. These are typically provided by your Internet service provider or you can use Google to find a public DNS server. One is fine but two is better in case one fails.

	Mesh	
	IP 🗅	ARP
	MPLS	Accounting
	Routing	Addresses
	System	DHCP Client
	Queues	DHCP Relay
	Files	DHCP Server
	Log	DNS
õ	Radius	Firewall

2. If you check "Allow Remote Requests", you can then point hosts on your LAN to the router's IP address and it will answer their DNS requests. It does this by looking in its local cache and if the requested host is not there, it goes to one of the servers configured in the DNS client and answers/caches the result. This provides a speed increase on the network. Click Ok to save.

Servers:	208.91.8.6	\$	OK
	216.81.36.10	\$	Cancel
	Allow Remote Re	equests	Apply
Max UDP Packet Size:	512		
Cache Size:	2048	КіВ	
Cache Used:	783		

3. In the IP DNS window on the Static tab, you may create static DNS entries that will override the DNS server records. This can be used as a simple means to handle local DNS names for devices such as printers or servers.

New DNS S	itatic Entry		
Name:	Server1		OK
Address:	10.0.1.1		Cancel
TTL:	1d 00:00:00	5	Apply

DHCP – Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol

DHCP is another one of those protocols we often take for granted, that is unless you remember when everything was statically addressed. DHCP takes the guesswork out of IP address allocation.

The DHCP protocol comprises two parts. These two parts are:

1. A <u>server</u> which listens for requests by DHCP clients, responds with an IP address, DNS server, and a default gateway.

2. <u>A client</u> that makes the DHCP request.

In addition, other information may be sent as options or configurations can be made on the DHCP server in response to the client request.

DHCP Client

The DHCP client is simple to set up. It merely involves telling the router the interface on which you want to request a DHCP address. In addition, you can request a DNS server and default gateway, and in most cases you want to receive those configuration pieces as well as an IP address.

Example – Add a DHCP Client

The goal with this exercise is to get an IP address dynamically on the router assuming there is an active DHCP server on the LAN.

- Mesh \mathbb{N} IP ARP Þ MPLS Accounting Routing Addresses DHCP Client System DHCP Client + -Y Release Renew Queues **DHCP Relay** / Use P... Add D... IP Address Interface Files DHCP Server Log DNS Radius Firewall Tools Hotspot New Terminal IPsec Make Supout.rif Neighbors Manual Packing
- 1. From the IP menu, select DHCP Client.

2. Click the plus sign on the New DHCP Client window and select the interface on which you want to receive the IP address and click OK.

atus Interface:	ether1		ОК
Interface:	ether1		Conserves a
	1		Cancel
Hostname:		-	Apply
Client ID:		•	Disable
	✓ Use Peer DNS ✓ Use Peer NTP		Сору
	Add Default R	oute	Remove
oute Distance:	0		Release
			Renew
	Client ID:	Client ID:	Client ID: Vise Peer DNS Vise Peer NTP Add Default Route

3. The status of the DHCP client will then be shown in the DHCP Client window including the IP address that was obtained.

÷			88	7	Re	elease	Reniew			000
	Inter	face	1	Us	e P	Add D	IP Address	Expires After	Status	
	🛕 br	idge1	austras	yes	5	yes	10.0.25.210/24	2d 23:59:52	bound	and the second

Note: If the interface on which you want to run the client is a port in a bridge, you must put the client on the parent bridge interface not the Ether(x) interface. More on bridges later.

4. The "Release" and "Renew" buttons perform the functions of releasing or renewing the IP address for the interface selected in the list window.

DHCP Server

Configuring DHCP client was simple and DHCP server is not much more complicated. The main requirement for DHCP server is a valid IP address on the interface where the server will run and then walking through the configuration steps with the help of the included setup script. Note that just like DHCP client, if the interface on which you want to run the server is a port in a bridge, you must put the server on the parent of the bridge interface. Failing to do so will render the server disabled and it will appear in the list window in red indicating it is invalid. The remainder of the explanation of DHCP server is best handled with examples, so let's begin!

Example – Create a DHCP Server

In this example we have assigned an IP address of 192.168.1.1/24 to interface ether2 where we want our DHCP server to operate. This is an important first step to make the setup very easy.

1. From the IP menu, select DHCP Server.

Mesh			
[P İ	ARP	DHCP Server	
MPLS	Accounting	DHCP Networks Leases Options Alerts	
Routing	Addresses		
System (DHCP Gient		Setup
Queues	DHCP Relay	Name / Interface Relay	Lease Tir
Files	DHCP Server		
.00	DNS		
Radius	Firewall		
Tools	Hotspot		
New Terminal	IPsec		

2. Click the DHCP Setup button to begin the configuration script. The first selection is the interface on which you want DHCP to operate.

DHCP Setup			
Select interface to run	DHCP	server on	
DHCP Server Interface	: ethe	r2	₹
В	lack	Next	Cancel
	64 56 J 5		

3. From this point forward you can typically accept the defaults, or make adjustments as required. The first window like this is the network address.

DHCP Setup			
Select netwo	rk for DHCP addi	resses	
DHCP Addres	s Space: 192.1	68.1 <mark>.0/24</mark>	
	Back	Next	Cancel
	Buck	TTEAL	Carreer

4. Next is the default gateway, typically the IP you added on the interface previously.

DHCP Setup			
Select gatewa	y for given net	vork	
Gateway for D	HCP Network:	192.168 <mark>.</mark> 1.1	
	Back	Next	Cancel

5. Next is the pool of addresses that will be created. If you want to exclude certain ranges of addresses from the DHCP pool, now is your opportunity.

DHCP Setup			
Select pool of ip a	addresses g	iven out by [DHCP server
Addresses to Giv	ve Out: 192.	168.1.2-192.	168.1.254 🗢
	Back	Next	Cancel

6. Next is the IP address of the DNS server(s) you want to give to your clients connecting to this interface. Again, make adjustments here as you wish but remember you must give clients at least one DNS server or the setup script will fail. If you want your clients to use your caching DNS server, then use the IP of your local interface. The logic is that we only want our clients to use our router for DNS since we are caching DNS requests. The router will then either answer from cache or go to its own DNS server to resolve the address.

Hotspot Setup Setup DNS co	nfiguration		
DNS Servers:	192.168.1	1	\$
r	Back	Next	Cancel

7. Next is the lease time and in most cases 3 days is fine. In situations where there is a high turnover of clients such as a public venue or a hotel, you may wish to make this time much lower to prevent exhausting your pool of IP addresses. An IP can not be reused until the lease expires, even if the client leaves the network, so shorter lease times are better for networks with high turnovers.

Select lease time		
Lease Time: 3d 00	:00:00	

8. DHCP server is now complete.

successfully
ОК

9. Once you have completed the setup script, any changes you would like to make can be done under the DHCP tab or the Networks tab.

DHCP Server				
	Leases Options /		ICP Setup	
Name	/ Interface ether2	Relay	Lease Ti 3i	Drup server
DHCP Server <dhcp< th=""><th>1></th><th></th><th></th><th>DHCP Networks Leases Options Alerts</th></dhcp<>	1>			DHCP Networks Leases Options Alerts
Name:	dhcp1		ОК	
Interface	ether2	Ŧ	Cancel	Address ▲ Cateway DNS Servers Doma ▲ 192.168 1.0/24 192.168.1.1
Relay:		•	Apply	DHCP Network <192.158 1.0/24>
Lease Time:	3d 00:00:00		Disable	Address: 192.158.1.0/24 OK
Bootp Lease Time:	forever	Ŧ	Сору	Gateway: 192.168.1.1
Address Pool:	dhcp_pool1	Ŧ	Remove	Netmask: Apply
Src. Address:	<u>.</u>	-		DNS Servers:
Delay Threshold:		-		Domain:
Authoritative	after 2s delay	Ŧ		WINS Servers:
Bootp Support:		Ŧ		NTP Servers:
	Add ARP For Lea			Next Server:
	Always Broadcas	st		Boot File Name: 📃 🔻
enabled	UseRADIUS			DHCP Options:

10. Any changes to the IP pool can be done under IP Pool.

IP	ARP	JP Pool
MPLS	Accounting	Entrance.
Routing	Addresses	Pools Used Addresses
System	DHCP Client	
Queues	DHCP Relay	Name Addresses
Files	DHCP Server	B dhcp_pool1 192.168.1.2-192.168.1.254
Log	DNIS	
Radius	Firewall	
Tools	Hotspot	
New Terminal	IPsec	
Make Supout.rif	Neighbors	
Manual	Packing	
Exit	Pool	
	Routes	

Example – DHCP Static Leases

In many cases it is desired that a host always receive the same IP address. For instance, you may have a computer on your network that you wish to access via remote desktop. In this case, static leases will ensure a host always receives the same IP address.

In the Leases window, find the lease you want to make static. Double click it to change the properties and click the button "Make Static".

DHCP Server	DHCP Lease <1	92.168.1.254, 0.0	.0.0>	
DHCP Networks Leases C	General Activ	/e		ОК
Address A MAC Ad	Address:	192.168.1.254	Ŧ	Cancel
192.168.1.254 AA:12:3	MAC Address:	AA:12:32:B1:21	22	Apply
	Cient ID:	Use Src. MA	C Address	Disable
	Server	all	`.	Comment
				Сору
	Lease Time		▼	Remove
		Block Acces Always Broa	Charles and the second	Make Static
	Rate Limit		-	Check Status
•	Address List		•	
item (1 selected)	enabled	radius	blocked	waiting

Example – DHCP Server Without an IP Pool

While DHCP server is typically used with a pool of IP addresses, it can also be run without a pool and only static leases. The application of this is to create a small amount of security for a DHCP network. If a host not previously known is brought onto the network, it will not be able to obtain a DHCP address because there is not static lease. An easy way to implement this policy is to create a standard DHCP server with a pool of addresses. Once all machines on the network have obtained an IP address, convert all of the leases to static as previously described and proceed as follows.

1. On the DHCP Server tab, double click the instance of DHCP server.

2. Change the Address Pool to "static-only". Once this is done, only hosts for which you have a static lease will be able to obtain a DHCP address.

+ *	DHCP Config	DHO	P Setup
Name	/ Interface ether2	Relay	Lease
DHCP Server <dhcp< td=""><td>1></td><td></td><td></td></dhcp<>	1>		
Name:	dhcp1		OK
Interface:	ether2	Ŧ	Cancel
Relay:] • [Apply
Lease Time:	3d 00:00:00		Disable
Bootp Lease Time:	forever	Ŧ	Сору
Address Pool:	dhcp_pool1 dhcp_pool1	Ŧ	Remove
Src. Address:	static-only		
Delay Threshold:]•	
Authoritative:	after 2s delay	Ŧ	
Bootp Support:	static	Ŧ	
	Add ARP For Lease	s	

HotSpot – Instant Public Internet

If you have been in the wireless industry long, you likely remember when it was new and trendy to offer free or paid Internet access wirelessly. Hotels were some of the first to jump on the bandwagon, realizing that the RJ-11 modem port on the side of the hotel telephone was no longer going to support the bandwidth hungry guest. Next, outdoor venues became popular as well as indoor venues like airports. Now, public WiFi (typically free) is considered a staple like public restrooms in the U.S.A.

What can you do with HotSpot? Well, the applications are numerous but to list a few, you can offer paid Internet access, free Internet access that requires only a user name and password to log in through a web page, restricted Internet access that only allows certain web sites to be accessed after authentication, and access that bombards your clientele with advertisements.

The heart of HotSpot is the redirect page. When a potential user associates with your wireless network or connects through a wired connection, any page they try to visit on their web browser will redirect them to your login page. This redirect page is included with RouterOS but can easily be customized if you are able to write in html code. Once they authenticate, they can navigate to any page they wish, a page you specify, or a list of pages that you allow. Again, the applications are numerous.

Example – Set up HotSpot

In this example we have a router with at least one wireless interface and existing Internet

access. Our goal is to create a default HotSpot on the wireless interface. Setting up HotSpot is very similar to setting up DHCP server, it is easily done through a setup script.

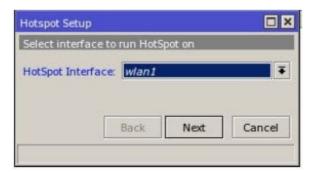
1. In WinBox, click the IP button and select HotSpot. Click the HotSpot Setup button to begin. For your first HotSpot, I recommend accepting the defaults for everything; it is much easier that way.

Mesh		
Ib D.	ARP	
MPLS 1	Accounting	
Routing P	Addresses	ofiles Users
System 1	DHCP Client	R
Queues	DHCP Relay	∠ Inter
Files	DHCP Server	
Log	DNS	
Radius	Firewall	
Tools 1	Hotspot 🔶	
New Terminal	IPsec	
Make Supout.rif	Neighbors	

2. Click the HotSpot Setup button.

Servers	Server Profiles	Users	User Profil	cs	A. Hive	Hos	sts [P Bir
+ -	T	Res	set HTML	Hot	spot Se	tup	
Nan	ne J	Interfa	ace	Add	iress P	lool	Profile

3. Select the interface where HotSpot will run, in this case, our wireless interface.



4. Next select the IP address for the interface. We are using the default IP address here.

erface	
10.5.50.1/24	ade Network
Next	Cancel
	Masquer

5. Select the pool of addresses to be issued, the defaults are fine.

Set pool for HotSpo	t addre	sses		
Address Pool of Network:		10.5.50.2-10.5.50.254		

6. This is an advanced option for those wanting SSL encrypted logins, the option "none" is fine for our example.

Hotspot Setup Select hotspot	SSL certificat	te	
Select Certifica	ate: none		•
		Next	Cancel

7. This can be dangerous so I recommend leaving it at the default of all zero's which means do not configure a default SMTP server. If you configure this option, all email from your HotSpot network will be redirected to your email server. Unless you want to be a spammer, leave it alone.

Hotspot Setup			
Select SMTP se	rver		
IP Address of S	MTP Server:	0.0.0.0)
	Back	Next	Cancel

8. DNS servers are required, so be sure to set them here.

Setup DNS co	nfiguration					
DNS Servers:	10.0.25.1		\$			
	208.91.8.6					
	Back	Next	Cancel			

9. This can be anything you want users to see in their web browser on the address line after the redirect. I recommend using a standard URL format. It does not have to be a

real domain because the router will create local DNS for the URL, but some web browsers have trouble unless you use a format like example.com or myHotSpot.net.

DNS name o	f local hotspot s	erver	
ONS Name:	Hot.Spot.com		

10. This message indicates you are done and clicking OK will complete the HotSpot.

0.0	0	X	1	H	10	ot	s	po	t S	Se	2	2	
Setup	has	con	nı	p	le	ete	ed	s	JCC	ce	ss	fu	lly
									Constant of		(Ж	

11. Remember that when you complete the last step and click OK, you will immediately be disconnected from the router and will have to log in to regain access. I recommend configuring your first HotSpot on an unused interface rather than the primary interface you use to access the router. Using that method, you will not lose your ability to access the router.

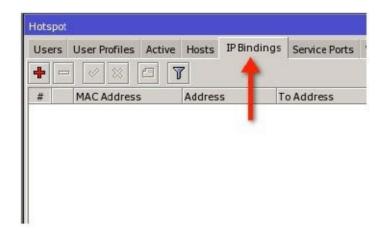
Example – Create IP Bindings

This scenario is very common; you have installed a wireless HotSpot in a venue such as an RV park and in return for offering a paid service, you have exchanged free Internet access for the owner. Obviously he or she doesn't want to log into the service each time, so how do you give them open access to the network? The facility is called IP Bindings. To create a binding for a certain host's MAC address, proceed as follows:

1. Click the IP button and select HotSpot.

Mesh		
Ib p	ARP	
MPLS	Accounting	
Routing 🗅	Addresses	Active Hosts I
System 🏷	DHCP Client	
Queues	DHCP Relay	Address
Files	DHCP Server	
Log	DNS	
Radius	Firewall	
Tools 🖹	Hotspot 🔶	_
New Terminal	IPsec	
Make Supout.rif	Neighbors	

2. On the Bindings tab, click the plus sign to create a new binding.



3. Enter the MAC address of the host to be given open access and set the Type to "bypassed".

MAC Address:	12:3A:4D:E5:6C:B1	•	OK
Address:	0.0.0.0		Cancel
To Address:		•	Apply
Server:	all	₹	Disable
Туре:	bypassed	₹	Comment
			Сору
			Remove

Example – Create additional Users

During the running of the IP HotSpot setup, you were prompted to create a user or set the password for the default user to "admin". It is important to note that the HotSpot user "admin" is not the same admin that can log into the router and configure it. They are two different databases and two different users. If you need to create additional HotSpot users, the process is simple.

1. Click the IP button and select HotSpot.

Mesh		
IP 🗅	ARP	
MPLS D	Accounting	
Routing 🗅	Addresses	Active Hosts I
System 🗅	DHCP Client	
Queues	DHCP Relay	Address
Files	DHCP Server	
Log	DNS	
Radius	Firewall	
Tools D	Hotspot	_
New Terminal	IPsec	
Make Supout.rif	Neighbors	

2. On the Users tab, click the plus sign and create a new user, setting the user name and password.

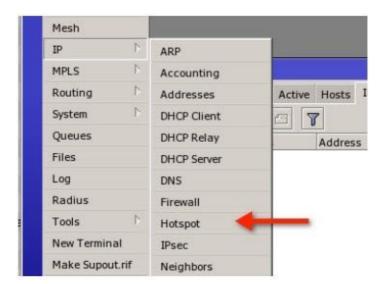
Image: Second	Server Profiles User	IS User Pr	ofiles Act	ive Hosts IP	Bindings	Service	Ports Wall	ed Garden
Image: Server	• 2	7	oo Res	et All Counters				
New Hotspot User Imits Statistics OK General Limits Statistics OK Server: all Imits Cancel Name: user1 Apply Password: Disable Address: Imits Profile: default Routes: Imits		lame	4	Address	MACAd	dress		Uptime
General Limits Statistics OK Server: bil Cancel Name: user1 Apply Password: Disable Address: T MAC Address: Comment Profile: default Routes: T	🚱 all 🛛 a	dmin					default	00
Server: all Cancel Name: user1 Name: user1 Apply Password: Address: Address: Comment Comment Copy Profile: default Remove Routes: Copy Remove		New	Hotspot U	ser				
Name: user1 Apply Password: Disable Address: T Address: T MAC Address: T Profile: default Routes: T Disable Copy Profile: Copy Remove Remove		Ge	neral Limi	ts Statistics		[OK	
Passward: Disable Disable Comment Comment Copy Routes: Copy Remove Routes: Contracts			Server:	all		Ŧ	Cance	el
Address: Comment MAC Address: Copy Profile: default F Routes: Routes: Remove			Name:	user1			Apphy	,
MAC Address: Comment Profile: default F Routes: Routes: Remove				-			Disab	le
Profile: default F Remove Routes:				-			Comme	snt
Routes:		MA	C Address:				Сору	
Roces All Counters				Constant of the			Remov	NE
1 item Email:	1 item					1	Reset All Co	xunters

Example – User Profiles

User profiles are a great way to group users and thereby assign default attributes to them. A few of the attributes that can be set for these users include rate limits, address pools, and packet marks. The most common application is rate limit. This enables you to create rate packages based on the amount a user pays and then group them manually into these groups. When they log into the HotSpot, they will have a simple queue created for them individually based on their profile.

To create a custom profile.

1. Click the IP button and select HotSpot.



2. Click the User Profiles tab and the plus sign to create a new profile. Name the profile whatever you wish and apply the limits you want. In this case, I have set a rate limit of 1M/1M, that way a simple queue will be created for any user to which this profile is applied.

Mesh									
ID D									
MPLS D	Hotspat 👈								
Routing 🖹	Users User Pro	ofiles	Active	Hosts	IP Bindings	Service Ports	s Wall	ed Garden	W
System 🗅	+-7								
Queues	Name	X	Session	Tim	Idle Timeout	Shared	Rate Li	imit (rx/tx)	T
Files	💮 GoldPlan	Users			non	e 1	1M/1M		
_og	🔹 😨 default	Hotspot	User Pr	ofile <(non GoldPlanUsers				×
Radius		Genera	a la contrata de la c	ertise	- Immunotees			3	-
Tools D		ocricic	Advi	(a)				ОК	-
New Terminal				Nam	e: GoldPlanU:	sers		Cancel	
Make Supout.rif			Addr	ess Poo	l: none		Ŧ	Apply	
Manual			Session	Timeou	+- [Сору	
Exit						10			-
			Idle	limeou	t: none)!	•	Remove	
		Ke	epalive	Timeou	t: 00:02:00		-		
		Sta	itus Aut	orefres	h: 00:01:00				
	2 items		Share	ed Usen	s: 1		•		
		F	late Lim	it (ny/ba): 1M/1M			-	
			Add	ress Lis	t: [•		

3. Finally, you must apply the profile to the user. In this example a user, "MrBig", has purchased the Gold plan so when he logs in, he will get a 1M x 1M rate limit.

Seneral Limit	ts Statistics	7	ОК
Server:	all	₹	Cancel
Name:	MrBig I		Арріу
Password:	secret		Disable
Address:		-	Comment
4AC Address:		-	Сору
Profile:	GoldPlanUsers	₹	Remove
Routes:		- _	Reset All Counters
Email:		•	Reset All Counters

Example – Server Profiles

1. Click the IP button and select HotSpot.

Mesh		
Ib 🗼	ARP	
MPLS	Accounting	
Routing	Addresses Active Hosts	
System 🗅	DHCP Client	
Queues	DHCP Relay Addres	s
Files	DHCP Server	
Log	DNS	
Radius	Firewall	
Tools ի	Hotspot	
New Terminal	IPsec	
Make Supout.rif	Neighbors	

2. On the Server Profiles tab, double click the profile to be modified.

Server		5 Users Use	er Profiles	Active	Hosts	IP Bi
+ -	• 7				1	
	ame 🛛 🕹	DNS Name	HTML Di hotspot	rectory	Rate	Limit
	hsprof1	Hot.Spot.com	hotspot			1
	General Logi	Interest and a second second			OK	_
	Hotspot Server F	Interest and a second second	1>			
	Nar				Cano	
	Hotspot Addre	ss: 10.5.50.1			App	ly
	DNS Nar	ne: Hot.Spot.c	om	▲	Сор	y
	HTML Directo	ory: hotspot		₹	Remo	we
	Rate Limit (rx/t	x):				
tems	HTTP Pro	xy:				
	HTTP Proxy Po	ort: 0				
	SMTP Serv	ver:		-		

3. Typically you are going to want the defaults for this profile on the general tab, however, on the Login tab you may wish to make some changes. The most common properties to change here are Cookies and Trial.

Cookies creates a cookie on the router when a user successfully authenticates and allows them to stay logged in for a time period based on the lifetime of the cookie, by default 3 days. This makes troubleshooting the HotSpot difficult so I typically uncheck Cookies.

The other property is Trial. When enabled, Trial will cause a Trial link to appear on the default HotSpot login page and allow unauthenticated access for a time period set below in the uptime limit setting, in this case 30 minutes of free usage. The host will then have to wait 24 hours or 1 day before they get another trial. You can also assign a profile to any trial users.

Hotspot Server Profile <	hsprof1>	
General Login RAD	IUS	ОК
- Login By	-	Cancel
MAC ✓ HTTP CHAP	Cookie	Apply
П НТТР РАР	🗹 Trial 🖊	Сору
MAC Auth. Password:		Remove
HTTP Cookie Lifetime:	3d 00:00:00	
SSL Certificate:	none	
	Split User Domain	
Trial Uptime Limit:	00:30:00	-
Trial Uptime Reset:	1d 00:00:00	_
Trial User Profile:	default 두	
default :		

Example – Walled Garden

Walled garden is a facility that allows unauthenticated access to certain sites based on a list. It can even be restricted to only certain paths on certain sites, so it is very configurable. The typical application is to allow enough access to get users interested in your HotSpot, or to allow them to browse your advertisers freely and then entice them into purchasing an account. To create allowed sites in walled garden:

1. Click the IP button and select HotSpot.

Mesh			
IP	ARP		
MPLS	Accounting		
Routing	Addresses	Active Hosts	
System	DHCP Clien	it 🖅	
Queues	DHCP Rela		5
Files	DHCP Serve	er	
Log	DNS		
Radius	Firewall	1000	
Tools	Hotspot		
New Terminal	IPsec		
Make Supout.rif	Neighbors		

2. On the Walled Garden tab, create a new entry. In this case notice I have used the asterisk (*) character so that www.advertisers.com, advertisers.com and any other URL's that are in the advertisers.com domain will be matched. In this rule I am allowing access but access can also be denied.

Sas osa nanes neere	Hosts IP Bin	dings Service Po	orts Wall	ed Garden
	7			
Action 🛆 Server	Method	Dst. Host	Dst. P	ort
llow		*advertisers.co	m	
Walled Gard	den Entry <*ad	vertisers.com>		
Actio	on: 🖸 allow	C	deny	ОК
Serv	er:		-	Cancel
Src. Addres	55:		•	Apply
				-
Dst. Addres	55:			Disable
Dst. Addres Metho				Disable Comment
	od:	isers.com	 ▼	
Metho	od:	isers.com		Commen

Example – Creating a Custom Login Page

Creating a custom login page is probably the number one question I am asked in my live classes. Obviously the default page is basic in design and needs a major facelift for a production site and that can be done quite easily. Coding HTML is beyond the scope of this book so I will only give you the process here.

Mesh	- 🗑 🕞 🖪 Backup Resto	ire		10/0/0	5
P C	File Name /	Туре	Size (reation Time	I
MPLS	MikroTik-18011970-1856.backup	backup	15.8 KiB	Jan/18/1970 1856:20	1
Routing 1	🖹 autosupout.rif	.rif file	304.7 KiB	Jan/10/1970 00:17:54]
1912 1913 19	Dotspot	directory		Jan/04/1970 21:48:12	
System F	hotspot/alogin.html	.html file	1293 B	Jan/04/1970 21:48:13	
Queues	hotspot/error.html	.html file	898 B	Jan/04/1970 21:48:13	
	🗄 hotspot/errors.bd	.txt file	3615 B	Jan/04/1970 21:48:13	
Files	hotspot/img	directory	ALC: NO PARTY OF A	Jan/04/1970 21:48:13	
Log	🖹 hot spot/im g/log obottom.pn g	.png file	3925 B	Jan/04/1970 21:48:13	
-	🖻 hotspot/login.html 🛛 🚽 🔤	.html file	3362 B	Jan/04/1970 21:48:13	1
Radius	hotspot/logout.html	.html file	1813 8	Jan/04/1970 21:48:13]
Tools 1	Chotspot/lv	directory		Jan/04/1970 21:48:12	1
New Terminal	🖹 hotspot/iv/alogin.html	.html file	1303 B	Jan/04/1970 21:48:12	
New Terminal	El hotspot/lv/errors.bt	.bt file	3810 B	Jan/04/1970 21:48:12	1
Make Support.rif	🖹 hotspot/lv/login.html	.html file	3408 B	Jan/04/1970 21:48:12	1
Manual	🖹 hotspot/lv/logout.html	.html file	1843 B	Jan/04/1970 21:48:12	1
Manual	🗄 hotspot/lv/radvert.html	.html file	1475 B	Jan/04/1970 21:48:12	1
Exit	Elbokenot/Ju/status.html	Istml file	2260.0	1aa/04/10/00 11:40:12	

1. Click the Files button and find the file login.html in the HotSpot folder.

2. Drag the file to your desktop and edit it there using your favorite text or html editor. When done, drag it back into the HotSpot folder and test.

For Further Study: For some great login sample pages, check the forums, there is a topic there with many fine examples.

One popular tweak is to change the form field for the user name from type text to hidden and then set the value of the user name to a shared user you have created. On the login page, users will only see a blank for a password. That way, if you simply want to restrict usage of your wireless network, you can give out the password to anyone that wants to use your wireless and not have to deal with the added complication of dealing with user names too. In login.html, look for the login form section:



Change the text identified by the arrows to this:

	'100" style="background-color: #ffffff">
<td< th=""><th>align="right">login</th></td<>	align="right">login
	<input name="username" style="width: 80px" type="hidden" value="sharedguestuser"/>
<td< td=""><td>align="right">password</td></td<>	align="right">password
	<input name="password" style="width: 80px" type="password"/>
	<pre>snbsp:</pre>
	<input type="submit" value="CK"/>

Also note you will need to create a user profile for the shared user and set the Shared Users setting to a higher number than one, otherwise only one person can log into your HotSpot using this method.

Conoral				
General	Advertise S	cripts	-	OK
	Name	SharedUSerProfile		Cancel
	Address Pool	none	Ŧ	Apply
Se	ssion Timeout		•	Сору
	Idle Timeout	none 🔻		Remove
Keep	alive Timeout	00:02:00	•	
Statu	s Autorefresh	00:01:00		
	Shared Users	999	•	-
Pat	te Limit (rx/tx):	1M/1M		

When a user loads the login page, they will only see a password blank to log in. You will obviously want to customize the page further but that is beyond the scope of this book.

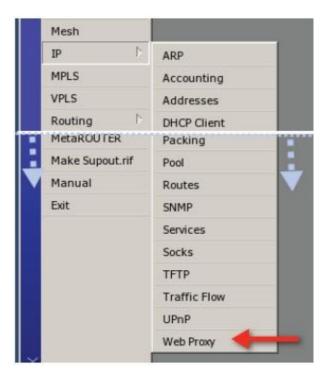
Web Proxy

Web proxy is a utility included with RouterOS that enables your router to act as a web cache and HTTP firewall. Specifically, when a user tries to visit a web page, the proxy receives the request, gets the page from the source and returns it to the user's browser. If the proxy has previously retrieved the page and stored it to memory or disk, it will deliver it from the cache rather than retrieve it from the actual web host. This process can significantly speed up a user's web experience and reduce overall utilization of the Internet connection. HTTPs or secure web pages cannot be cached. A cached copy of your bank statement would not be helpful.

Some caveats need to be stated here for the safety and proper operation of web proxy on your network. **First, web proxy can be easily misused and exploited by hackers so it is important to only allow access to certain hosts on your network using firewall rules.** I will demonstrate those rules in the example to follow. Also, simply configuring web proxy is not enough to put it in place in your network; you will need some NAT rules to send HTTP traffic to the proxy.

Example – Configuring a Transparent Web Proxy

This configuration is referred to as "transparent", because it requires no configuration by users on the network. In this scenario NAT rules intercept all HTTP traffic and send it to the proxy.



1. First, we configure the proxy itself. Click the IP button and select Web Proxy.

(Menu is compressed in this view)

2. Check the box "Enabled" and the defaults are fine for everything else. You likely do not want to cache on disk unless your board has an external drive. The RouterBOARD itself has limited onboard storage and the constant writes to the storage may shorten its life.

	Connections Cache Co			. In .	
Wcb Proxy Settings	Reset Cou	inters	SE Reset Al Cou	nters Wet	Proxy Setting Method
General Status Looku	os Inseris Retreshes		OK Cancel	135	16
Src. Address: Port:	8080]▼]‡	Apoly Clear Cache		De .
Parent Proxy: Parent Proxy Port:		•	Reset HTML		
Cache Administrator:	webmaster				

3. Next, we need a NAT rule to send all TCP port 80 (web traffic) to the proxy. This is done under IP Firewall NAT.

Firewa	sil							
ilter Rule	s NAT	Mangle	Service	Ports (Connections	Address Lists	Layer7 Protocols	ĺ
NAT R	tule <80	>						
General	Advance	ed Extra	Action	Statisti	ics			
	Chain:	dstnat						E
Src.	Address:							
Dst.	Address:							
	Protocol:	6 (top)				Ŧ	
\$	Src. Port:							
(Dst. Port:	80						
A	Any. Port:							1
In. I	nterface:							

The action for the NAT rule is redirect, which as you may remember means intercept the traffic and process it on the router.

eneral Adva	anced Extra Action Statistics	
Action:	redirect	
To Ports:	8080	

4. Finally, we need a firewall rule (actually two) to prevent unauthorized access to our

proxy. This is done under IP Firewall and Filter.

Mesh									
PPP									
IP	1	Addresses		ewal	1		14		
outing		Routes	E E	Iter R	ules NAT		Company of the second s	Contraction of the local division of the loc	out Sectors
Ports		Pool	4	1			🍸 🖾 Reset	Counters	00 R
Queues		ARP	#		Action	Chain	Src. Address	Dst. Address	Prot.
Drivers		Firewall							
System	Þ	Socks							
lles		UPnP							
Log		Traffic Flow							

5. Create a new filter rule by clicking the plus sign.

	101 0000000	vice Fulls	Connections	Ac
+ - < = 2	7	🚝 Re	set Counters	00
Action Chain		0 111	ss Dst. Addre	

6. The Chain is input, the source address is the address of our LAN, in this case 192.168.1.0/24, the protocol is TCP, and the port is 8080.

General	Advanced Extra Action Statistics	
	Chain: input	
Src.	Address: 192.168.1.0/24	
Dist.	Address]-
	Protocot 🔲 6 (top)	Ŧ.
	Src. Port	
	Src. Port	
		·

7. On the Action tab select accept.



8. Next we need a rule to drop all other traffic to our proxy. Again, the Chain is input, the protocol is TCP, and the port is 8080.

Firew	all Rule <8	080>				
General	Advanced	Extra	Action	Statistics		
	Chain: 🛅	put				1
Src.	Address:					
Dst.	Address:					
	Protocol:	6 (top)	i.		Ŧ	
2	Src. Port:					1000
3)	Dst. Port: 📃	8080				
1	Any, Port:					
	P2P:					

9. On the Action tab select drop.

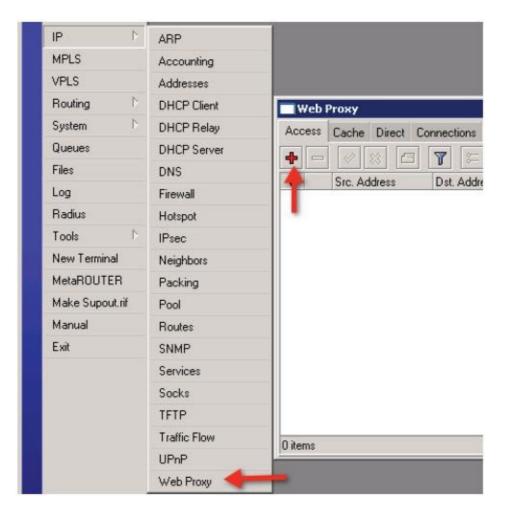


The proxy is now intercepting all port 80 requests, and proxying them. In addition, the firewall is allowing access to the proxy from the LAN but dropping proxy traffic from all other sources.

Example – HTTP Firewall, Allowing or Blocking Certain Sites

With the web proxy in operation, now we can use the full power of this feature to allow, deny, or redirect certain sites. The Access rules are used for this purpose and work on an "if, then" principal, just like firewall rules. In this example we will allow access to www.mikrotik.com and block all other sites.

1. With a properly configured and working web proxy as detailed in the previous example, click IP and select Web Proxy. Click the plus sign to create a new rule.



2. The Dst. Host will be the site you want to allow, in this case *mikrotik.com. We used the asterisk here so that www.mikrotik.com or just mikrotik.com would match the rule. Then click Ok.

		-	In the second	he Contents
	× 2		Carlos Contractor	et Counters 🛛 🚝 R
	ddress	1	Address	Dst. Port D
Web Proxy	Rule <>		1417	
Src. Address:			•	OK
Dst. Address:			•	Cancel
Dst. Port:				Apply
Local Port:			•	Disable
Dst. Host:	*mikrotil	<.com	-	Comment
Path:			•	Сору
Method:			•	Remove
Action:	allow		₹	Reset Counters
Redirect To:			*	Reset All Counters
Hits:	0		1	

3. Next we need a rule to block access to all other sites. Remember, rule order is always important. The new rule is created using the plus sign, and the only thing changed is the Action of "deny".

Access	Cache [Direct C	onnect	ions	Cach	e Contents		
+ -			7	87 F	Reset	Counters	:=	Rese
#	Src. Addr	ess	Dst.	Addres	s	Dst. Po	ort	Dst.
0	•							*mikr
Web	Proxy Ru	ıle <>						×
Src. Ad	dress:			•		OK		
Dst. Ad	dress:			•		Cano	el	
Dst	Port					Арр	ly .	
Loca	l Port:			•	Γ	Disab	le	
Dst.	Host:			•	Ī	Comm	ent	=
	Path:			•	Ī	Сор	y	
M	ethod:			•	Ī	Remo	ve	
۵,	ction: den	y		₹		Beset Co		
Redire	ct To:			-	ł			-
					÷.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	Reset All C	ount	ers

4. Users will now be able to browse mikrotik.com but no other sites. The rule order should be as follows:

Access	Cache Direct (Connections Cac	he Contents				
+ -	• 💽 🗶 🗖	7 00 Res	et Counters 0	o Reset All Coun	ters	Web Proxy Settings	
#	Src. Address	Dst. Address	Dst. Port	Dst. Host	Path	Method	Action
0	0			*mikrotik.com			allow
1	0		1				deny

Users will now get this page in their browsers for any site except mikrotik.com:

ERROR: Forbidden	
While trying to retrieve the URL http://www.mozilla.com/en-US/firefox/cen	tral/:
Access Denied	
Your cache administrator is webmaster.	
Generated Fri, 19 Aug 2011 15:04:07 GMT by 19921 231.193 (Mikrotik Hi	tpProxy)

Example – Redirect Users to Certain Sites

In this example, instead of simply blocking sites, we want to send them elsewhere. For purposes of the example, any users that try to visit yahoo.com will be redirected to google.com.

1. With a properly configured and working web proxy as detailed in the previous example, click IP and select Web Proxy. Click the plus sign to create a new rule.

IP 🗅	ARP	
MPLS	Accounting	
VPLS	Addresses	
Routing 🏷	DHCP Client	🔲 Web Proxy
System 🏷	DHCP Relay	Access Cache Direct Connection
Queues	DHCP Server	4
Files	DNS	
Log	Firewall	Src. Address Dst. Ad
Radius	Hotspot	•
Tools 🔿	IPsec	
New Terminal	Neighbors	
MetaROUTER	Packing	
Make Supout,rif	Pool	
Manual	Routes	
Exit	SNMP	
	Services	
	Socks	
	TFTP	
	Traffic Flow	0 items
	UPnP	
	Web Proxy 🔶	

2. The Dst. Host will be the site you want to redirect, in this case *yahoo.com. In the action, select deny as before but now we add a "redirect to" address of google.com. The net result is that any users that browse to yahoo.com will instead get google.com.

Src. Address:		•	OK
)st. Address:		-	Cancel
Dst. Port:			Apply
Local Port:		-	Disable
Dst. Host:	yahoo.com	•	Comment
Path:		•	Сору
Method:		•	Remove
Action:	deny	₹	
Redirect To:	google.com	•	Reset Counters
Hits:	0		Reset All Counters

3. Next we need a rule to block access to all other sites. Remember, rule order is always important. The new rule is created using the plus sign, and the only thing changed is the Action "deny".

Access Cack	ne Direct C	onnections	Cac	he Contents	
+ - <	8	7 =	Res	et Counters	🚝 Res
and the second se	Address	Dst. Addr	ess	Dst. Po	
0 •					*mikr
Web Prox	y Rule <>				×
Src. Address:			•	OK	
Dst. Address:			•	Canc	el
Dst. Port:				Appl	у]
Local Port:			•	Disab	le
Dst. Host:			•	Comm	ent
Path:			•	Copy	y
Method:			•	Remo	ve
Action:	deny	1	Ŧ		
Redirect To:			•	Reset Cor	unters
				Reset All C	ounters
Hits:	34				

Remember to use your newly acquired knowledge for good and not for evil.

Example – Logging Web Traffic

The final application we will cover is combining these examples and adding the ability to track our user's Internet activity. This is done simply through the logging facility. With a properly configured web proxy, proceed as follow:

1. Click on System and select Logging.

Routing 🗅	
System 🗅	Auto Upgrade
Queues	Certificates
Files	Clock
Log	Console
Radius	Drivers
Tools D	Health
New Terminal	History
MetaROUTER	Identity
Make Supout.rif	License
Manual	Logging 🚽

2. Create a new logging rule for the topic- web-proxy. Then click the down arrow to create another row and then click the "not" box (!) and select debug. Combining logging rules like this modifies the rule such that we will log web proxy requests but remove the debug information to make them more readable. You can optionally add a prefix, a text string that will be appended to the beginning of each line in order to make them easier to identify in the logs. In this case I have entered "LOGGING->".

+ - 🖉 🖇	3			Find	
Topics	Δ	Prefix		Action	
info				memory	
error				memory	
warning				memory	_
critical				echer	
	v Log Rule	1000		X	
Topics	v Log Rule web- debug LOGGIN	proxy ∓ g ∓] ≑] ≑] ▲	OK Cancel Apply	
Topics Prefix	: web-r	proxy ∓ g ∓] ♦] ♦] ▲	OK Cancel	
Topics Prefix	: web-r	proxy ∓ g ∓	¢ ▲	OK Cancel Apply	

3. Logging to memory is not a good option here except for purposes of this example. Instead, I suggest logging remotely to a syslog server.

As you can see, web proxy can not only improve network performance and reduce Internet usage but can also create an HTTP firewall or create a permanent log of sites visited.

Example – Logging to a Remote Syslog Server

There are many syslog servers available free of charge for a diverse variety of platforms. Syslog is a server daemon (a Linux term for a service or process) that listens for logging streams from remote devices and writes them to a central log. This is a scalable way to design a network because of the ability to centrally monitor the logs of all devices and store many days worth of logs with central archiving. The Dude, MikroTik's free monitoring solution, comes complete with a syslog server. To enable remote logging to a syslog server, proceed as follows.

1. Click on the System button and select logging.

System 🖂	Muto opgrade				
Queues	Certificates				
Files	Clock	Logging			
Log	Console				
Radius	Drivers				
Tools D	Health		7	Fin	d
New Terminal	History	Topics	/ Prefix	Action	
MetaROUTER	Identity	info error		memory	
Make Supout.rif	LEDs	warning		memory	
Manual	License	critical		echo	
Exit	Logging	-			
	Packages				

2. On the Action tab, double click the remote list item and set the Remote Address and Port to match your syslog server.

			Log Action <remote< th=""><th colspan="2"></th></remote<>			
Log	ging		Name:	remote		OK
Rules Actions		Type:	Type: remote		Cancel	
÷	- 7		Remote Address:	172.0.0.12	-	Apply
	Name	/ Туре	Remote Port	E14		Com
×	disk	disk	Hemote Forc	014		Сору
×	echo	echo	Src. Address:	0.0.0.0		Remove
×	memory	memory				
N.	remote	romoto		BSD Syslog		

3. On the Rules tab, select the topic you want to send to the syslog server or create a new topic. On the Action, use the pull-down box to select "remote". All logs for this topic will now be sent to the remote syslog server. Note that topics can be combined as shown in this example. For example, we want web-proxy logs but not the debug portion. The "!" symbol tells RouterOS to strip debug info from the web-proxy logs.

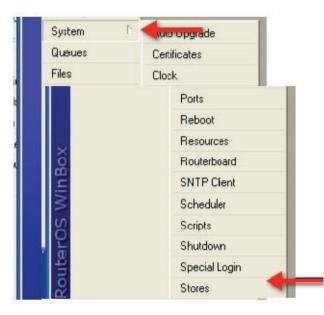
Chapter 13 – Storage

System Stores

While RouterBOARDs have limited onboard storage, RouterOS has facilities to manage this storage which is most useful for x86 based routers or RouterBOARDs with additional external storage. Stores can be used for dedicated usage such as the Dude monitoring system or Web Proxy.

Example – Explore Stores

1. Storage is manipulated under System Stores.



2. Clicking on the Disks tab will display the raw volumes the operating system has access to. On this tab you can check, erase or format a drive.

7	Check Drive	Clean Drive	Forma	t Drive			Find
	Name	Total Space	e	Free Spac	e	Status	
	system	- 10	61.4 MB		31.5 MB	ready	

3. The Stores tab allows you to create dedicated partitions on the physical disks.

Stor	es Disks				
r	Check Drive	C	lean Drive Fo	ormat Drive	
	Name	X	Total Space	Free Space	Status
	system	an a	61.4	MB 31.	5 MB ready

Example – Create a Store

1. Click on the System button and select Stores.

System	N Kuto opgrade	
Queues	Certificates	
Files	Clock	
	Ports	
	Reboot	
- 20	Resources	
ŝ	Routerboard	
E	SNTP Clent	
3	Scheduler	
S	Scripts	
ar.(Shutdown	
ute	Special Login	-
0	Stores	-

2. On the Stores tab, click the plus sign to create a new store. Name the store anything you wish and select the type as web-proxy.

3. Select the disk on which to create the store and check activate.

If the Dude is installed on the device, there will be an option in the type pull-down to create a Dude store.

Stor	es Disks				
-	- 7	Activ	ate Co	ру	
	Name	7	Туре		Disk
	Test web-proxy1		web-proxy web-proxy		system system
		New Sto	re		
		Name:	Storage		OK
		Type:	web-proxy	₹	Cancel
		Disk:	system	Ŧ	Apply
			✓ Activate		Remove
					Activate
					Сору

Chapter 14 – More RouterOS Tools

When I am asked by a customer why they should select MikroTik over some other manufacturer, I believe my first response is because of the tools. Within RouterOS is a vast array of tools to allow you to diagnose network functionality, some of which you have already seen such as torch, as well as tools to extend the functionality of the system. In other words, if you need a function that isn't an included feature, many times you can build that functionality through the integrated tools. The tools we will explore in this chapter are email, netwatch, ping, traceroute and profile.

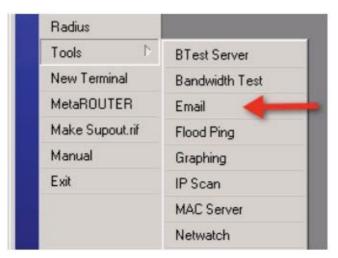
Email Tool

The email tool is a configurable function that can be used by other functions within RouterOS. For example, if you want to write a function to create a backup file and then have the router email the backup file to you, the email tool can perform this function. Scripting to conduct backups is fairly straightforward and will be discussed in the following examples, however, a complete discussion of scripting would encompass another book and therefore is not included here. There are many good sources of information on RouterOS scripting on the web, especially on the MikroTik Wiki at http://wiki.mikrotik.com.

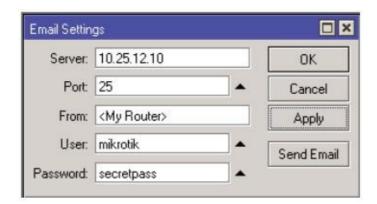
The email tool can be configured for your particular email server and then called later through a script, thereby only supplying the details needed for the email such as recipient address, subject line and email body. If you do not configure the email tool in advance, all of the necessary information can be included when executing the command, but configuring in advance through the following example will certainly improve the usability of the email tool.

Example – Configure the Email Tool

1. To configure the email tool, click on the Tools button and select Email.



2. In the Email Settings window, configure the settings to match your email server. User and password are only used if your server requires authentication to send email. The "From" blank is the "From" address that will be used in crafting the email.



3. The Send Email button will allow you to send a test email to confirm your settings.

Send Email			
Address:	0.0.0.0	-	Send Email
Port:			Cancel
User:			
Password:			
	TLS		
To:	support@mikrotik.com		
CC:		\$	
From:	router@mydomain.com		
Subject:	Testing Email		
	This is a test	*	
Body:			
		=1	
File:	l auropault		
rile:	suppout		

Note: The items noted with arrows above may be left at the defaults if the tool has been previously configured as in steps 1 and 2 above. If you have not configured the tool, you may provide those values here.

Example – Use a Script With the Email Tool and Scheduler to Create and Send a Backup

This example demonstrates the power of scripting and scheduler to allow unattended backups of your router that can be created and emailed to you. It is a simple use of these tools but nonetheless a powerful and often requested script. This example uses the export function to create an ASCII backup that may be imported as a backup or edited and imported. A binary backup can be created using a similar scheme with the appropriate commands.

1. Click the System button and select Scripts.



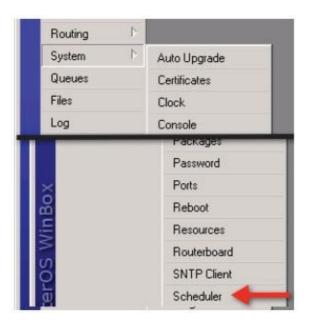
2. Click the plus sign to create a new script. Configure the script as shown.

Script List	NewScript	
Scripte Jobs	Name: Backup	OK
+ - 7	Owner:	Carcel
Name	- Policy	Apply
	✓ reboot	Сору
	vince policy ✓ test ✓ password	Remove
	sniff sensitive	Run Script
	Last Time Started:	
	Run Count: 0	
	Source:	
	/export file=export /tool e-mail send to="config@mydomain.com" \ subject="\$[/system identity get name] export) \ body="\$[/system clock get date] configurationfie" \ file=export.rsc	
0 items		

The command to create the script from the command line is:

```
/export file=export
/tool e-mail send to="config@mydomain.com" subject="$[/system identity get name] export) \
body="$[/system clock get date] configuration file" file=export.rsc
```

3. Now, create a Scheduler job to run the script under System Scheduler.



4. Click the plus sign and create a new scheduler job for our Backup script.

	Schedule ()aiyBackup>	
	Name	DailyBackup	ОК
	Start Date:	Aug/22/2011	Cancel
Scheäuler	Start Time	01:00:00	 Арріу
research in sector is research in the sector is in the	Intervat	00:00:00	Disable
Name DailyBackup	Backup		- Comment
Daysdexap			Сору
			Remove
• 1 Kem	- Policy V reboot V write V lest V sniff Run Count	 ✓ policy ✓ password ✓ sensitive 	
	enabled	Lowertard capa at	-
di di seconda di second	the transferred		

In this scheduler job, our backup script will run every day at 1:00 am and email the export file to us. Scripts are great for extending the features of RouterOS. Almost any command can be scripted to run at a predetermined time and thereby allow unattended functions that make this system really powerful. The "On Event" property can be a series of RouterOS commands like lines from a script or the name of a stored script file.

Netwatch

The purpose of Netwatch is to execute a command if a host IP address is no longer reachable by ping. Upon ping timeout, a script can be executed for "Down" and when the host responds again, another script can be executed for "Up". There are many uses for Netwatch and the

possibilities are endless.

Example – Reboot the Router Using Netwatch

RouterOS is extremely stable. I have many times seen router uptimes of over a year, so the chance of a router needing a reboot like a Windows based PC is really low. However, for purposes of an example, here's a way to reboot the router if it is no longer able to ping the Internet. The command executed by Netwatch is entirely up to you. Again, this is only an example.

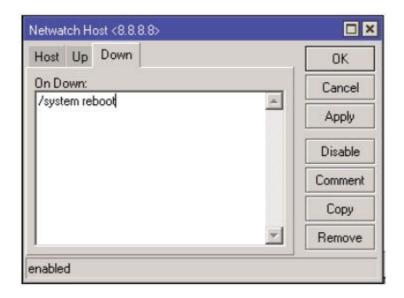
1. Click the Tools button and select Netwatch.

Rad	ius	2000 2000		
Too	ls 🗅	BTest Server		
New	/ Terminal	Bandwidth Test		
Met	aROUTER	Email		
Mak	e Supout.rif	Flood Ping		
Man	ual	Graphing		
Exit		IP Scan		
		MAC Server		
		Netwatch		
×		Packet Sniffer		

2. Click the plus sign to create a new Netwatch. Enter the IP address of the host to be pinged.

Netwatch	n						×
+		27				Find	1
Ho	st 8.8.8.8	Δ	Interval	Timeout (Since Jan/04/1970 20:42:18	-
	Netwatch H Host Up Host: Interval: Timeout: Status:	8.8.8.8 00:01:00 1000	00:01:00	1000	Up OK Cancel Apply Disable Comment Copy Remove		
1 item	enabled						

3. On the Down tab, enter the command to be executed.



When this host is no longer reachable, the router will be rebooted.

Ping

Ping is a utility to test the reachability of a network host. It is a really basic tool, nevertheless, the most often used tool. I typically invoke ping from the command line out of habit, but it is also available in WinBox under Tools and Ping.

Traceroute

Traceroute is a tool to trace the path an IP packet passes through to get from source to destination. It works by using the TTL or Time To Live function of a packet. If you aren't already familiar with TTL, whenever a router receives a packet it looks at the TTL value to determine whether it needs to handle the packet. If the TTL is greater than 1, it routes the packet according to its routing table. If the TTL is equal to one, the router drops the packet. The reason for this is before sending the packet on its way, the router decreases the TTL by one as a way to say "I am done with this packet" and then it sends it down the pipe. This is done to keep a packet from bouncing around the network forever in case of a routing problem in a network. If the packet entering the router has a TTL of one, the router knows it will be reducing it to zero, so it drops the packet.

Traceroute works by increasing the TTL value of each successive set of packets sent. The first set of packets sent has a TTL value of one, and traceroute knows they will not be forwarded by the first router. The next set has a TTL value of two, so that the second router they enter will send the error reply. This continues until the destination host receives the packets and returns an ICMP Echo Reply message. Traceroute uses the returned ICMP messages to produce a list of routers that the packets have traversed. The timestamp values returned for each router along the path are the delay (also known as latency) values, typically measured in milliseconds for each packet. ⁴

Understanding now how traceroute works, the application for traceroute is to learn the path a packet takes from source to destination. Traceroute can be invoked from the command line or by clicking the Tools button and selecting Traceroute.

Profile

Profile or Profiler as it is sometimes called, is a tool to display CPU usage and allocation of CPU resources across all processes that are consuming resources.

There are no configurable options in profiler, but it is a great diagnostic tool for determining what is consuming system CPU resources.

Chapter 15 – Wireless

Wireless is a subject that is really a discipline all of its own, yet combines two very different disciplines into one. Because of that complexity and the lack of control over the environment in which wireless networks are operated, it is probably one of the most challenging fields with which I have ever been involved. Wireless combines standard packet based networking with radio frequency engineering, so to be a wireless master, you really need to be experienced in both areas.

Wireless Theory

This book is about RouterOS, but a certain, basic understanding of wireless theory is necessary to ensure the comprehension of what the different settings and features really mean. Specifically, the IEEE 802.11 is a set of standards for implementing Wireless Local Area Network (WLAN) communication in the 2.4, 3.6 and 5 GHz frequency spectrums. They were created and are maintained by the IEEE LAN/MAN Standards Committee. The base version of this standard has had several amendments as the technology has evolved over the years and provides the basis for wireless networking products using the Wi-Fi band.

The 802.11 standards employs a series of over-the-air modulation techniques using the same basic protocol. The most common standards are referred to as 802.11a, 802.11b, 802.11g and the newest, 802.11n. The spectrum available for 802.11 networking varies by country and there are additional restrictions on power output for various configurations. The reader is encouraged to contact their local regulatory authorities to ensure they are operating in accordance with local regulations.

802.11a

The 802.11a standard operates on 5 GHz and supports a maximum data rate of 54 Mbits/s with a real life throughput of around 25 Mbits/s. There is a variation of 802.11a called "turbo mode" which is capable of 108 Mbits/s maximum data rate using 40 MHz channels instead of the standard 20 MHz channels. The 802.11a standard uses a modulation technique referred to as OFDM – Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing.

802.11b

The oldest standard is 802.11b which operates on 2.4 GHz, has a maximum data rate of 11 Mbits/s and a real life throughput of about 5 Mbits/s. 802.11b suffers from massive interference problems in our "everything is wireless" world. The 802.11b standard uses a modulation technique referred to as DSSS – Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum.

802.11g

IEEE 802.11g extends the operation of 802.11b which operates on 2.4 GHz by increasing the maximum data rate to 54 Mbits/s and typically achieves a real-life throughput of about 25 Mbits/s. However, 802.11g also suffers from interference. Similar to 802.11a, 802.11g uses a

modulation technique referred to as OFDM – Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing.

802.11n

IEEE 802.11n further extends the operation of 802.11g and 802.11a by increasing throughput, reach and reliability through the use of numerous protocol enhancements. At the time of this writing, these have only partially been implemented in commodity devices. Among these enhancements, the most visible improvement comes through multiple streams or chains of data transmitted between devices, requiring multiple antennas or at the least, dual polarity antennas on each end and greatly improving throughput. MIMO or Multiple Input Multiple Output is the technology that makes this possible. 802.11n operates on either 2.4 or 5 GHz and supports data rates up to 600 Mbits/s.

Channelization – 2.4 GHz 802.11b/g/n

Wireless devices suffer most from one factor, interference. Interference is the phenomenon that occurs when two wireless devices in close proximity are able to unintentionally receive or "hear" each other's transmissions. The best analogy of this is a crowded room. When everyone is talking at the same time, it is hard to discern who the speaker is much less what they are saying. The same happens when many wireless devices are all trying to communicate at the same time.

In the 2.4 GHz spectrum, there are many devices that share a very small section of the unlicensed spectrum and therefore noise or interference abounds. The standard channel width for 802.11b is 22 MHz, therefore with the spectrum available in the U.S.A., with only 11 available channels. Because of the channel spacing, only three channels do not overlap with each other. By overlap, I mean that the center frequency of the channel and the 11 MHz of spectrum that is used on either side crosses over the adjacent channels. For example, channel 1 on 802.11b stretches up to overlap with channel 2,3,4, and 5. Channel 6 is the next available channel. Because of this, if you are using 802.11b with multiple devices, the only available channels are 1, 6 and 11. Any other combination of channels would cause your devices to interfere with themselves. Cordless household phone use these same frequencies.

Consider the following diagram.

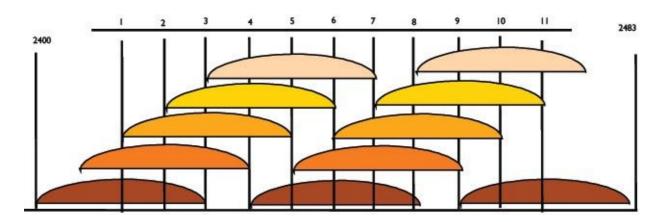


Figure 9 - 802.11 b/g Channels, 2.4 GHz ¹

As you can see, the channels centered on 1, 6 and 11 do not touch or overlap, therefore they do not create interference with each other. On the other hand, channels 1 and 2 clearly overlap, thereby causing interference and poor performance. In some cases the interference can cause the inability for two devices to communicate with each other at all.

802.11a offers much more promise because operating in standard 20 MHz channel mode, all channels are usable because they do not overlap like 802.11b.

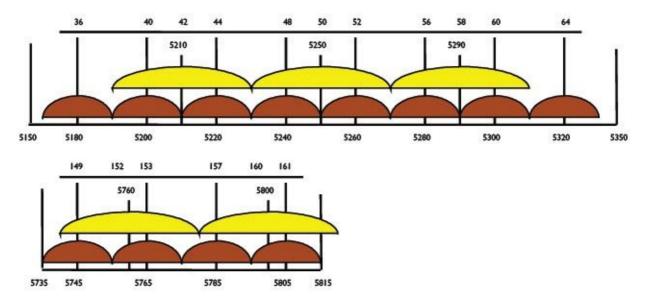


Figure 10 - 5.8 GHz Channels

Because of the design and the larger spectrum available, there is a lot more flexibility with 802.11a and higher acceptance by service providers. Using the standard 20 MHz channels as you can see, there are 12 non-overlapping channels available. Using turbo channels (40 MHz) there are 5 usable turbo channels concurrent with 2 usable standard channels. Note that using 802.11a in turbo mode reduces the number of available channels to one half because each turbo channel is 40 MHz instead of the standard 20 MHz.

Small Channels

The Atheros chipset (used in many WiFi radios) brought an enhancement to the 802.11 protocol in the form of small channels or half and one quarter channels. By reducing the size of the channel, the overlap is reduced or eliminated and many more channels are available.

The disadvantage of small channels is compatibility with products that don't support this feature and the reduced aggregate throughput available to devices using the smaller channels.

As a rule of thumb, if a link is capable of passing 25 Mbits/sec with 20 MHz channels, expect half of that for 10 MHz channels and one-fourth for 5 MHz channels.

Bridged Versus Routed Access Points and Stations

There are two primary modes of operation for wireless devices; bridged and routed. Although the actual configuration of their wireless components is very similar, there are differences that need to be explained and understood.

Routed

A routed device consists of multiple interfaces, in this case wired and wireless. There is no Layer 2 connection between these interfaces in a routed device meaning that for traffic to pass between the interfaces, the device must follow routing rules to determine packet flow. All packets must follow the routing rules, firewall rules, and various queue rules. By default, all RouterOS devices operate in routed mode unless you create bridges and bridge ports together.

Bridged

A bridged device consists again of multiple interfaces, but one or all of these physical interfaces are joined together into a logical interface called a bridge. The bridge interface joins the physical devices at Layer 2, such that any packets entering one interface pass freely out the other interface on the bridge (except in the case of a bridge firewall). In the configuration of a wireless interface joined to an Ethernet interface, think of a bridged device as a media adapter, joining two dissimilar media together.

Bridges are a useful configuration, especially with respect to wireless, however they must be used with caution because it is very easy to create a network with bridges that is not scalable and quickly outgrows itself. As a general rule of thumb, never connect two bridged devices together, either directly or with a switch. Instead, separate bridged links with routers. Routers block broadcast traffic and thereby allow you to use bridged devices while building a scalable network.

The examples that followed can be each configured in succession to build a complete wireless AP solution.

Configure an Access Point (PtMP) With DHCP Server

PtMP or Point to Multi Point is a phrase that refers to the configuration of a wireless access point that can support multiple wireless stations. One common way to configure such an access point is a routed configuration with DHCP server. This example combines several different concepts and ties them all together. For this reason, it introduces new concepts as well as cross-references to other sections of this book, thereby tying together these concepts.

Example - Initial Wireless Interface Configuration

1. Begin by configuring the wireless adapter on the device. This is done by clicking the Wireless button and double clicking the wireless interface to be configured, typically wlan1.

Call Safe Mode											
Interfaces											
Wireless	-	-									
Bridge	Wireless Tab	lee									
PPP	Interfaces	Contraction of the second	المعددة العر	list Desister	tion Connect I	int Caraction	Desfiles				
Switch					1				-		÷.
Mesh	+•	8 24	37	Scanner	Freq. Usage	Alignmen	Wirele	ss Sniffer	Wireles	s Snooper	
IP I			/ Турс		L2 MTU Tx	Rx		Pac Rx F	ac Tx I	Drops Px	Drops
MPLS 1		nl	Wireless V	Atheree AR5	2290	0 bps	0 bps	0	0	0	1
Routing 1	1										
System P											

2. On the wireless tab, select the wireless mode as "ap bridge".

terface <wlan1></wlan1>			
General Wireless W	DS Nstreme NV2 Status		ок
Mode:	ap bridge		Cancel
Band:	2GHz-B		Apply
Channel Width:		T I	Disable
Frequency:	C	MHz	Comment
SSID: Scan List:	MikroTik default		Torch
Wireless Protocol:	Langererererererererererererererererererer	[Scan
Security Profile:	default	Ŧ	Freq. Usage
Antenna Mode:	antenna a	T	Align
Bridge Mode:	enabled	Ŧ	Sniff

3. Next, select the band on which you are going to operate. For standard wireless clients such as laptops, you can use "2.4GHz-B/G" or "2.4GHz-B/G/N" if your wireless adapters support 802.11n.

iterface <wlan1></wlan1>			C
General Wireless W	DS Nstreme NVZ Status		ОК
Mode:	ap bridge	.	Cancel
Band:	2GHz-8/G	•	Apply
Channel Width:	20MHz	Ŧ	Disable
Frequency:	2412	MHz	Comment
	MikroTik		Torch
Scan List: Wireless Protocol:	Landar and the second se		Scan
Security Profile:		TT I	Freq. Usage
Antenna Mode:		T	Align
Bridge Mode:	enabled	Ŧ	Sniff

4. The next step is to select the frequency. Taking into account the limitations previously described for 2.4 GHz, you should first find a free frequency by clicking the

Freq. Usage button. This will scan for available frequencies.

terface <wlan1></wlan1>					
General Wireless M	/DS Nstreme NV2 Status		ОК		
Mode:	ap bridge	Ŧ	Cancel		
Band:	2GHz-B/G	₹	Apply		
Channel Width:	20MHz	Ŧ	Disable		
Frequency:	2412	MHz	Comment		
SSID:	MikroTik		Comment		
Scan List:	default	1	Torch		
Wireless Protocol:	unspecified	Ŧ	Scan		
Security Profile:	Language and the second s	Ŧ	Freq. Usage		•
Antenna Mode:	antenna a	Ŧ	Freq. Usage		
Bridge Mode:	enabled	Ŧ	Interface: w/an1	Ŧ	Start
Default AP Tx Rate:		ops			Stop
Default Client Tx Rate:	·				Close
	la de la companya de	_			New Window
	Default Authenticate Default Forward		Frequency (MHz) / Us	sage	Noise F
	Hide SSID		2412		-105
			2417	and the second se	-105
				2.2	-105
				4.0	-104
				7.9	-100
			2437		-105
			2442	Sector and the sector	-104
				6.7	-105
				4.0	-105
			2457 4		-105
					-106

5. Once you have decided on an available frequency, select it using the Frequency selector. Note that if there are no other access points in the area, then it is best to stick with channels 1, 6, or 11 and pick your channels to not cause interference between your own access points. If there are other AP's in the area outside your control, you will likely need to pick a free channel by using the Frequency Usage tool as described above.

Interface <wlan1></wlan1>				
General Wireless W	/DS Nstreme NV2 Status	and in	ОК	
Mode:	ap bridge	Ŧ	Cancel	
Band:	2GHz-B/G	₹	Apply	
Channel Width:	20MHz	₹	Disable	
Frequency:	2412	MHz		
SSID:	MikroTik		Comment	
Scan List:	default		Torch	
Wireless Protocol:		-	Scan	
Security Profile:	La contra de la co	=	Freq. Usage	
Antenna Mode:	Long to the second seco	Ŧ	Freq. Usage	
Bridge Mode:	I and the second s	∓	Interface: Wan7	Start
Default AP Tx Rate:		- has		Stop
		r bps		Close
Default Client Tx Rate:	Default Authenticate	bps		New Window
	Default Forward		Frequency (MHz) / Usage	Noise F
	Hide SSID		2412 18.8	-105
			2417 12.7	-105
			2422 2.2	-105
			2427 4.0	-104
			2432 7.9	-100
			2437 14.2	-105
			2442 11.9	-104 -105
			2447 0.7	-105
			2457 40.8	-105
			2462 19.9	-106
nabled n	unning slave			

6. Next, decide on an SSID or Service Set Identifier, the text string that will be broadcast to identify your network.

nterface <wlan1></wlan1>		
General Wireless W	/DS Nstreme NV2 Status	ок
Mode:	ap bridge	Cancel
Band:	2GHz-B/G	Apply
Channel Width:	20MHz	
Frequency:	2412	MHz Comment
SSID:	MikroTik	Torch
Scan List:	default	Scan
Wireless Protocol:	unspecified	
Security Profile:	default	Freq. Usage
Antenna Mode:	antenna a	Align
Bridge Mode:	enabled	Sniff

7. Finally, set the Wireless Protocol to 802.11 to support standard, non-RouterOS as well as RouterOS stations.

ionoral Wireless V	VDS Nstreme NV	/2 Status		ок
Mode:	ap bridge		Ŧ	Cancel
Band:	2GHz-B/G		•	Apply
Channel Width:			•	Disable
Frequency:		∓ N	IHz	Comment
	MikroTik		* i	Torch
Scan List:				Scan
Wireless Protocol:			Ŧ	Freq. Usage
Security Profile:			₹	Align
Antenna Mode:	antenna a		₹	Sniff
Bridge Mode:	enabled		Ŧ	JF III 1

Next comes security. RouterOS supports several wireless security protocols and the most common are WEP, Wired Equivalency Privacy, and WPA2 or Wi-Fi Protected Access. WEP is antiquated and not very secure yet it is supported for legacy applications. Wireless Security Profiles are explained beginning on page 233.

Wireless Security

I always tell my classes that security is not simply a button we push and then walk away feeling safe and secure. Instead, we go for a layered approach, understanding that the more layers we add, the more secure the network will be. In addition, we stress that each layer of security has a cost and that cost is paid in performance and maintainability. The more complex the security, that is, the more layers, the more work it is for a potential hacker to get in and the more work it is for us to maintain.

In this book, we discuss several ways to secure your wireless network and again, we opt for a layered approach. The layers that can be applied easily are:

MAC Filtering – Controlling access at the MAC layer. If the station can't associate, it can't gain access. MAC filtering can be circumvented by spoofing the MAC address of an allowed station so it is not very effective for seasoned hackers.

Encryption – WEP, WPA and WPA2 are some encryption protocols supported in RouterOS. By encrypting the data transmission, the network is greatly fortified.

Proprietary Protocols – using Nstreme or NV2 is a way to control access to the network. The hacker will have to use RouterOS to gain access and statistically this helps improve our odds of resisting attack.

Hiding the SSID – A very basic approach, nevertheless it is effective in keeping the existence of your wireless network away from most unsophisticated users but true hackers will not even be slowed down.

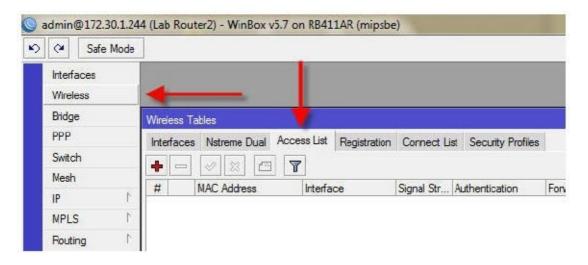
Controlling Access with MAC Lists

The most basic layer of security we can add is MAC filtering, that is, controlling access based upon the MAC address of the station trying to associate with us or controlling which access points our station can associate with. This can be done on both the access point and the station. MAC filtering on an access point is done with "Access Lists" and on a station it is done with "Connect Lists".

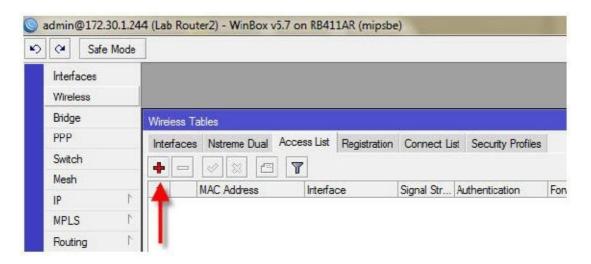
There is a global setting on the wireless interface that can influence the behavior of MAC filtering, found on the wireless tab called "Default Authenticate". This setting is enabled by default and basically tells the wireless interface to associate with any station or access point it can without restriction. If you uncheck "Default Authenticate", stations will only be able to associate with AP's in their connect list and AP's will only allow association from stations in their access lists.

Example – Create an Access List on an AP

1. To create an access list on an access point, click on the Wireless button and select the Access List tab.



2. Click the plus sign to add an access list entry for a station and click OK. The only required information here is the MAC address.



3. An easier method is to click on the Registration tab, and right click an already associated station and pick the menu item "Copy to Access List". This assumes you

have the "Default Authenticate" checked on the AP thereby allowing the station to associate. Once the station is added to the access list, you can uncheck "Default Authenticate".

Interface	s Nstreme	Dual /	Access List	Registration	Connect List	Securit	y Profile	S		
- 7	00 Res	et								
Rac	lio Name 📝	MAC A	ddress	Interface	Uptime	AP	W	Last Activit	Tx/Rx Signal	Tx/Rx Rate
\$\$		00:16:		v Categories		-	no	13.580	-35	11.0Mbps.
			Shov	v Columns		•				
			Find		0	+F				
			Find	Next	Ctrl	+G				
	_		🕨 Сору	y to Access Li	st					
			Com	to Connect	List					

4. An alternative method to using the "Default Authenticate" method is to create a "drop rule" in the access list. Since the rules are processed in order, the last rule can be a new rule that does not specify the MAC address and has Authentication unchecked. By placing this rule at the bottom of your list, only the stations specified in the access list will be allowed to associate and no others. Note that the access list entries take precedence over the global setting of "Default Authenticate" on the interface.

Image: Market of the second
0 400:A0:C9:14:C8:29 all -120120 yes yes
2 🚸 all -120120 no yes

Example – Create a Connect List on a Station

Why would a station need a connect list? Association to an access point is based on the setting of the SSID. If you do not specify an SSID, the station will connect to the strongest AP it sees. Even if you do specify an SSID and some malicious person wants to create trouble for you, they can configure the same SSID and if their signal is stronger your station may "jump" to their AP. That is likely a bad thing. To prevent this action or to allow your station to connect to several different SSID's you can use connect lists. Much like the access list, the connect lists is arranged in a hierarchical manner with the most preferred AP's at the top. If the "Default Authenticate" setting is unchecked, or if you use a drop rule, your device will

only associate with the intended AP, the one in the connect list.

1. To create a connect list on a station, click on the Wireless button and select the Connect List tab.

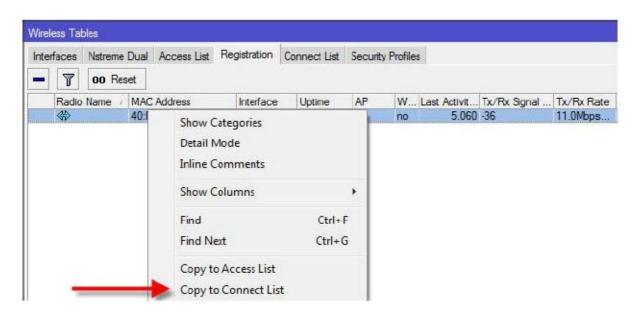
admin@172.30.1.	244 (Lab Rou	ter2) - WinBox	v5.7 on RB411AR (mi	psbe)			
い 🖓 Safe Mod	•						
Interfaces	1.11						
Wireless	-	-					
Bridge	Wireless T	ables					
PPP	Interfaces	Nstreme Dual	Access List Registra	tion Cornec	t List Sec	urity Profiles	
Switch	+						
Mesh	#	Interface	MAC Address	Connect	Anna Deefin	Signal Str	C
IP 1	#	Intenace	MAC Address	Connect	Area Freix	olgriai ou	36
MPLS							
Routing 1							

2. Click the plus sign to add a connect list entry, specify the SSID and/or MAC address and click OK.

Interface:	wlan1	Ŧ	OK
MAC Address:		•	Cancel
	Connect		Apply
SSID:	SafeNet	•	Disable
Area Prefix:		•	Comment
Signal Strength Range:	-120120		Сору
Wireless Protocol:	any	Ŧ	Remove
Security Profile:	default	Ŧ	

3. An easier method is to click on the Registration tab, and right click on an already associated AP and pick the menu item "Copy to Connect List".

Once the entry is copied to the connect list, you can uncheck "Default Authenticate".



4. An alternative method to using the "Default Authenticate" method is to create a "drop rule" in the connect list. Since the rules are processed in order, the last rule can be a new rule that does not specify the MAC address and has Authentication unchecked. By placing this rule at the bottom of your list, **only** the AP's specified in the connect list will be associated with. Note that the connect list entries take precedence over the global setting of "Default Authenticate" on the interface.

Interf	faces	Nstreme Dual	Access List Registration	Connec	t List	Secu	rity Profiles	
+			T					
#		Interface	MAC Address	Connect	Area P	refix	Signal Str	Security
0		Wan 1	00:A0:C9:14:C8:29	yes	Distant		-120120	default
1		wan 1	00:A0:C9:14:C8:30	yes			-120120	default
2		Wan 1		no			-120120	default
				Î				

5. Also note that in a connect list entry, you can specify as much or as little information as you want in order to be more or less restrictive. For example, if you specify the SSID, then the station will connect to any AP with that SSID, however adding the MAC address of the AP restricts it to a single AP.

For Further Study: Some other features that can be configured on a connect list are interface, (if you have multiple wireless interfaces), or signal strength (to only allow a station to associate if it has a certain signal strength). Other features include the time of day or days of the week.

Example - Encryption Using WEP

Configuring any security protocol in RouterOS involves two steps. First, create a profile that dictates the protocol and keys. Second, apply that profile to the interface.

To create the security profile for WEP:

1. Click the Wireless button and then the Security Profiles tab. Click the plus sign and create a new profile and name it whatever you wish. Change the mode to "Static Keys Required".

0	0	Safe Mo	de										
	Interfaces				68							1	
	Wirel	ess	1	4	_	-	•						
	Bridg	Bridge		ge Wireless Tables									
	PPP	PPP		Inte	faces	Nst	reme Dual	Access L	List	Registration	Connect List	Security Profile:	
	Swite	h		+		7							
	Mesh	i -			Name	-	/ Mode		0.0	thenticatio	Unicast Ciphers	Canua Cinham	
	IP		1	1	1		The second s	1,000	1		Unicast Ciphers		
	MPL:	S	N		and a state of the		Profile <we< td=""><td>1</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></we<>	1					
	Routi	ing	N		Gen	eral	RADIUS	EAP S	tatic	c Keys		OK	
	Syste	m	N				-	Name:	W	EP example pr	ofile	Cancel	
	Queu	ies						Mode:	sta	itic keys requir	ed Ŧ	Apply	
	Files				- AL	then	itication Typ	oes ——		20			
	Log					WP	APSK	0		NPA2 PSK		Сору	
	Radiu	JS				WP	AEAP	E		WPA2 EAP	F	Remove	
	Tools		>		- Ur	nicas	t Ciphers –						

2. On the Static Keys tab, select Key 0 using the key type you require, typically 40 bit or 104 bit. A 40 bit key is 10 digits and a 104 but key is 26 digits. In the blank type the key you want to use and then click Ok.

General RADI	US EAP	Static	Keys	OK
Key 0:	40bit wep	Ŧ	0x	Cancel
Key 1:	none	Ŧ	0x	Apply
Key 2:	none	₹	0x	Copy
Key 3:	none	Ŧ	0x	Remove
Transmit Key:	key 0		•	
St. Private Key:	factor		T∓ 0x	

3. Back on the Wireless tab, double click the wireless interface to be configured with security.

Safe Mo	de
Interfaces	
Wireless	—
Bridge	Wireless Tables
PPP	Interfaces Natrama Dual Access List Registration Connect List Security Profiles
	Interfaces Natromo Dual Access List Registration Connect List Security Profiles
Switch	
Switch Mesh	+ → → ⊗ ⊗ 🖆 🍸 Scanner Freq. Usage Alignment Wirel
Mesh	Image: Scanner Freq. Usage Alignment Wirel Name / Type L2 MTU Tx Rx Tx
Mesh IP	Image: Second Control of C

4. On the Wireless tab, select the interface and use the pull-down to select the security profile you just created.

Wireless Tables									
Interfaces Natreme Dual	Access	List Reg	gistrati	ion Conn	ect List	Se	curity P	rofiles	
+ Ø × 6	7	Scan	her	Freq. Us	age	Alig	nment	Wirele	ss Sniffe
	ype Vireless	(Atheros A		L2 MTU 2290	Tx	bps	Fix C	Tx	Pac F
Interface <wlan1></wlan1>		- West					1		
General Wireless	WDS	Nstreme	NV2	Status	Traffic	[ок	
Mod	le: ap b	ondge			Ŧ			Cancel	
Ban	id: 2GH	lz-B/G			Ŧ	[Apply	
Channel Widt	th: 20M	lHz			Ŧ	1	1	Disable	
Frequenc	zy: 241	2			MHz	Ì	С	omment	
SSI	D: Mikr	roTik						Torch	
Scan Li	st: defa	ault			-				
Wireless Protoc	ol: 802	.11			Ŧ			Scan	
1 nem Security Profil	le: WE	P example	profile	е	₹		Frec	q. Usage.	[
Antenna Mod	le: ante	enna a			×		.6	Align	
Bridge Mod	le: enal	bled						Sniff	

Example – Encryption Using WPA(2)

To create the security profile for WPA or WPA2:

1. Click the Wireless button and then the security tab. Click the plus sign and create a new profile and name it whatever you wish. Change the mode to "Dynamic Keys". For the Authentication Types, select WPA PSK and/or WPA2 PSK, depending on the type of security you want to support.

<₽	Safe Mode						
Interf	aces						
Wirel	ess	-	_				
Eridge	e	Witeless Ta	bles				
PPP		Interfaces	Nstreme Dual	Access List	Registration	Connect List	Security Profile
Switc	h	4	7				
Mesh	E.	Name		Δ.,	thenticatio	Unicast Cishere	Group Ciphers
IP	1	4	Security Profile	J/L	ulenacato	Unicasi Cipriers	
MPLS	s 🖻						
Flouti	ng 🖹	Ger	RADIUS	EAP Static	: Keys		OK
Syste	m N			Name: Wi	PA example pr	ofile	Cancel
Queu	ies			Mode: dyr	namic keys		Apply
Files		- A	uthentication Typ				
Log			WPAPSK		WPA2 PSK		Сору
Radiu	JS		WPAEAP		WPA2 EAP	F	Remove
Tools	r E		nicast Ciphers –		en e		
New	Teminal		tkip	L a	es ccm		
Meta	ROUTER	12	roup Ciphers —	-			
Make	Supout.rif		tkip	2	es ccm		

Unicast and Group Ciphers are again dependent on the type of station security you want to support. Checking more will result in supporting more types of stations.

2. On the Security Profiles Tab, in the WPA Pre-Shared Key and/or the WPA2 Pre-Shared Key blank, type the passphrase you want to share between the AP and station.

NOTE: In the upper right corner of WinBox is a check box labeled "Hide Passwords". Uncheck that box at any time to ensure what you have typed is what you intended. Click Ok to save the profile.

General RADIUS EAP Static Keys OK Name: WPA example profile Cancel Mode: dynamic keys Image: Apply Authentication Types Image: WPA2 PSK Copy WPA EAP WPA2 EAP Remove	
Mode: dynamic keys Apply Authentication Types V WPA PSK V WPA2 PSK Copy	
Authentication Types	
WPA PSK WPA2 PSK Copy	
WPA EAP WPA2 EAP Remove	
- Unicast Ophers	
Group Ciphers	

3. Back on the Wireless tab, use the pull-down to select the security profile you just

created and click OK.

ieneral Wireless W	DS Nstreme NV2 Status	Traffic	OK	
Mode:	ap bridge	Ŧ	Cancel	
Band;	2GHz-8/G	•	Apply	
Channel Width:		•	Disable	
Frequency:	2412 Ŧ	MHz	Comment	
Scan List:		Torch		
Wireless Protocol:	802.11	.	Scan	
Security Profile:	WPA example profile	₹	Freq. Usage	
Antenna Mode:	antenna a	Ŧ	Align	
Bridge Mode:	enabled	Ŧ	Sniff	

Example - IP Addressing, DNS, Masquerade

With the wireless interface configured and security established, next we need to handle IP addressing. Typically, the device will receive an IP address from the network it is connected to in order to receive Internet access. Assuming you receive your address using DHCP, add a DHCP client to the Ethernet interface that will connect to the Internet, typically ether1. The process of adding a DHCP client is outlined on page 168.

Next, we need to add an IP address on the wireless interface as demonstrated on page 41.

We likely want our router to be a caching DNS server, thereby reducing our Internet usage and speeding up the DNS process. Enable caching DNS as demonstrated on page 166.

With an IP address in place, next we likely want to add DHCP Server to automatically give out IP addresses to our wireless clients. This is demonstrated on page 170.

Finally, we will need a NAT masquerade rule to hide our LAN behind a public IP address as shown on page 104.

At this point you should have a fully functioning wireless access point.

Example – Configure a Wireless Interface to be a Routed Station (client)

As previously explained, when a router is outfitted with multiple interfaces, not tied together by a bridge, it is operating in routing mode. In this example, we will configure a routed station that can associate with an access point. The Ethernet port will be connected to our laptop or a switch and the wireless interface will connect to a wireless access point that provides DHCP and Internet access. 1. Click the Wireless button and double click the wireless interface to be configured.

0	(24	Safe Mode								
	Interfa	ices								
	Wirele	88	←	_						
	Bridge		Wireless Ta	bles						
	PPP		Interfaces	Nstreme Du	ual Access I	List Registra	tion Con	nect List	Security Pr	rafiles
	Switch	1	.			Scanner	Freq. Us	ane	Alignment	Wirele
	Mesh	\$				Sedimer				
	IP	1	Name Name	7 C 1	/ Type Wireless (A	Atheros AR5	L2 MTU 2290	Tx Oł	Rx Dos C	Tx) bps
	MPLS	N					ann an			
	Routin			P						
	House									

2. The minimum information to be configured is the Mode, the band, the SSID, and the Wireless Protocol. Set the Mode to station, the Band to the frequency of your access point (typically 2.4 GHz, 802.11 b/g/n), and the Wireless Protocol to 802.11 and then click Apply.

erface <wlan1></wlan1>				
ieneral Wireless W	DS Nstreme NV2 Status .		ОК	
Mode:	station	Ŧ	Cancel	
Band;	2GHz-B/G	Ŧ	Apply	
Channel Width:	20MHz	Ŧ	Disable	
Frequency:	2412 두	MHz	Comment	
SSID:	Example AP	.	Torch	
Scan List:	default]▲		
Wireless Protocol:	802.11	Ŧ	Scan	
Securty Profile:	default	Ŧ	Freq. Usage Align	
Antenna Mode:	antenna a	Ŧ		
Bridge Mode:	enabled	Ŧ	Sniff	

3. If you are unsure of the SSID, you can scan for it using the Scan button and then clicking Start. This will scan for wireless networks in the band you previously specified.

4. To select an SSID, click the Connect button and that SSID will be loaded into the SSID blank. Stop and close the Scan tool. The router should then be connected to the AP. If the AP requires security, it can be configured exactly the same way as security for an access point as described on page 233.

5. At this point the wireless station should be associated with the access point.

6. Add DHCP client to the wireless interface as shown on page 168.

7. Add an IP address to the Ethernet interface as shown on page 41.

- 8. Configure DNS as instructed on page 166.
- 9. Add DHCP server to the Ethernet interface as demonstrated on page 170.
- 10. Add a masquerade NAT rule as shown on page 104.

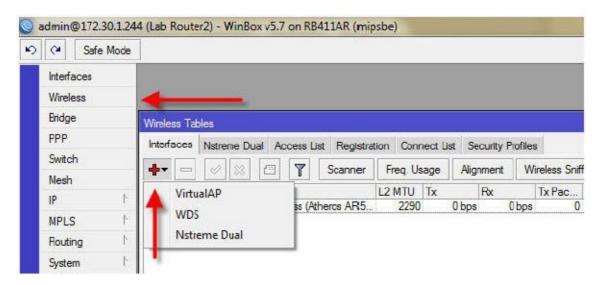
At this point the wireless interface should be associated with the access point, designated by the letter "R" next to the wireless interface name in the wireless interface list. The "R" stands for running. Running is the same as "linked" in Ethernet terms, meaning there is at least one association between an AP and station. The wireless interface should have a dynamic IP address received from DHCP client, the DHCP server should be handing out IP addresses on the Ethernet interface, and your laptop connected to the Ethernet port should have Internet access.

Example – Create a Virtual AP

Virtual AP's are a great way to provide diverse functions with a single wireless interface. To the router they behave like a physical interface, but only require a single adapter. The only real difference between a virtual wireless interface and a physical one is that they share the same physical card so they can only operate on one channel, the same channel as the physical interface. Virtual AP's can be bridged, addressed, hand out DHCP addresses, run HotSpot and many other functions with few limitations.

To create a virtual AP:

1. Click the Wireless button and then in the Wireless Tables window click the plus sign.



2. Select Virtual AP. On the Wireless tab, enter the SSID you want it to broadcast. Once configured, you can apply a separate security profile as previously described or configure the Virtual AP as any other physical interface.

New Interface			
General Wreless W	DS Status Traffic	1	ОК
SSID:	example vAP	▲	Cancel
Master Interface:	wlan 1	•	Apply
Security Profile:	default	₹	Disable
Default AP Tx Rate:		▼ bps	Comment
Default Client Tx Rate:		🔽 🛨 bps	Сору
	Default Authenticate	=	Remove
	 Default Forward Hide SSID 		Torch
			Advanced Mode
nabled	Nunning	slave	

Bridging – Point to Point or Point to Multi-Point

There are several ways to bridge a RouterOS device but the goal is always the same. Join dissimilar physical interfaces into one logical interface. RouterOS support several methods of bridging, but I advocate only one, station-wds mode. This method can be used in a mixed wireless network, that is, an access point that will support routed stations as well as bridged stations.

Bridging an access point is straightforward and completely accepted in the IEEE 802.11 standard. Bridging a device while configured in station mode is not acceptable in the IEE standard and for that reason we need a workaround to perform bridging. The wireless mode that will enable bridging a station is named "station-wds" mode and is simple to set up on the station but requires support on the access point. Both configurations will be described here.

Example – Transparently Bridging a Link

Station End

1. To bridge the station device, click the Wireless button and then double click the wireless interface.

C*	Safe Mod	ie									
Interfa	aces										
Wirek	966	-		-							
Bridge	•	Wret	ess Tab	lee							
PPP		10000	faces	11000	Juni Acce	ss List Registra	vien Connect I	list Caracter D	V-files		
Swite	h		1000				1 Carlos and Carlos			1	-
Mesh		+-		S. 22	9	Scanner	Freq. Usage	Alignment	Wireless Shiffer	Wireless Snooper	•
IP			Name		/ Туре		L2 MTU Tx	Rx	Tx Pac Rx	Pac Tx Drops Px	Dr
MPLS		r		an]	Wireles	e (Atheres AR5	. 2290	O bps (O bps 0	0 0	-
Routi	ng	E .	1	÷							
Syste	-	P I									

2. Set the Mode to station-wds and set the SSID to the one to be used on the AP. In this example, we are using "MikroTik" as the SSID. Set the Band to the frequency you are using such as 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz, and the desired Wireless Protocol. In this example we are using 802.11. Then click Ok.

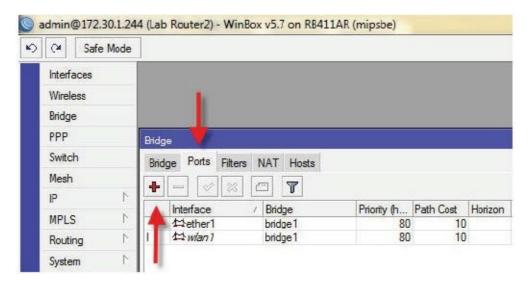
erface <wlan1></wlan1>				
ionoral Wireless M	DS Nstreme NV2 Status		ок	
Mode:	station wds	.	Cancel	
Band:	2GHz-B/G	T	Apply	
Channel Width:	-	T	Disable	
Frequency:	2412	▼ MHz	Comment	
Scan List:		=1	Torch Scan	
Wireless Protocol:	802.11	T		
Security Profile:	default		Freq. Usage	
Antenna Mode:	antenna a	T	Align	
Bridge Mode:	enabled	Ŧ	Sniff	

3. Click the Bridge button and the plus sign to add a new bridge interface and click Ok.

ତ 💜 Saf	e Mode								
Interfaces									
Wireless									
Bidge		-	_						
PPP		Bridge							
Switch		Bridge	Ports Filt	ters NAT Host	3				
Mesh	10	+ -			Settings				
IP	Ň				Seturigs		-		
MPLS	1		ame ⊉bridge1	Z Type Bridge		L2 MTU 1526	Tx 41.4 kbps	Rx 5.5 kbp	Tx Pac
Routing	1				********	1020			
System	N								

4. On the Bridge Ports tab, click the plus sign and add the Ethernet port to be bridged (typically ether1) to the new bridge you just created and click Ok. Repeat for the

wireless interface. The station is now bridged, but now we must adjust the access point.



Access Point End

1. On the access point, create a new bridge interface and click Ok.

Bridge	Ser Billige
PPP	Guidge Ports Fiters NAT Hosts
Switch	
Mesh	🕂 🗁 🖉 🖾 🝸 Settings
IP	Name Type L2 MTU Tx B 4⊐bridge1 Bridge 1526 18
MPLS	R 4=3 bridge1 Bridge 1526 18
Routing	P
System	1
Queues	
Files	
Log	
Dedice	

2. On the Bridge Ports tab, add the wireless interface to the bridge and click Ok.

Safe Mo	de					
Interfaces						
Wireless						
Bridge						
PPP	Bridge					
Switch	Bridge Ports F	iters NAT	Hosts			
Mesh			7			
IP		and have been				The second
MPLS	hterface	/ Bridg bridg	the later of the second s	Priority (h 80	Path Cost	Horizon
Routing	E Marri	рид		6U		1
System	N .					

3. Back on the wireless interface list, double click the wireless interface. On the Wireless tab, set the Mode to "ap-bridge" and set the frequency desired. Also, set the

SSID you want to use, in this example it is "MikroTik". Finally set the desired Wireless Protocol. We are using 802.11.

terface <wlan1></wlan1>			C
General Wireless W	/DS Natreme NV2 Status		ок
Mode:	ap bridge	.	Cancel
Band:	2GHz-B/G	•	Apply
Channel Width:	and the local data and the local	_ • r	Disable
Frequency:	2412 MkroTik	▼ MHz	Comment
Scan List:	The second s		Torch
Wireless Protocol:	802.11	- , [Scan
Security Profile:	default	T	Freq. Usage
Antenna Mode:	antenna a	Ŧ	Align
Bridge Mode:	enabled	=	Sniff

4. On the WDS tab, select WDS Mode as dynamic and WDS Default Bridge as the bridge you created, typically bridge1. It may be necessary to disable and re-enable the wireless interface on the station to cause it to re-associate with the access point now that is supports WDS.

Interfaces		-	Interface <wlap< th=""></wlap<>
Wireless		Wireles	Advanced WDS Nstreme NV2 Tx Power
Bridge		Interfa	WDS Mode: Jynamic 🗧
PPP		4	WDS Default Bridge: pridge1
Switch			
Mesh		R 🔇	WDS Default Cost: 100
IP	1		WDS Cost Range: 50-150
MPLS	1		
Routing	N		WDS Ignore SSID

5. If you want the access point to be completely bridged, that is, wireless to Ethernet, simply add its Ethernet interface as another port on the AP's bridge.

Point to Point Links

If your access point is being used with a single station as in a backhaul or point-to-point link, you can set the wireless mode to "bridge". This mode is available in the Level 3 license while ap-bridge mode is not available in the Level 3 license. In bridge mode, the device is still an access point, but will only support one station, ideal for low cost point-to-point links.

Example – Pseudobridge Modes

In some scenarios, it is not possible to use an access point that supports WDS. If the station must still be bridged, as a last resort, you may use one of the two pseudo bridge modes. I state that with reluctance because any mode that defies the standard, is fraught with possible

problems. As previously stated, bridging a station is contrary to the IEEE standard, and should only be used where absolutely necessary.

In RouterOS version 5 and above, the pseudobridge modes are supported according to an Applicability Matrix as follows:

	802.11	ROS 802.11	nstreme	nv2
station	V	v	v	v
station-wds		v	v	v
station-pseudobridge	٧	v	v	
station-pseudobridge-clone	V	v	v	
station-bridge		v	v	v

Figure 11 - Application Matrix by Protocol¹

As you can see, the pseudobridge modes are supported with most protocols except for NV2.

If you need to use pseudobridge mode, there are two options, station-pseudobridge and station-pseudobridge-clone.

Wireless Mode Station-Pseudobridge

In this mode, the wireless stations works very much like source NAT in the firewall facility. Specifically, the devices source nats packets sent to the access point using the MAC address of its wireless card. A MAC translation table is maintained on the wireless station and any packets entering the device from a client are stripped of their MAC address and the MAC of the station is inserted in their place. Returning packets are treated in the opposite manner returning the originating host's MAC address. This masquerading process will not work with many non-IP based protocols, so as stated before, pseudobridge modes should always be avoided when possible.

Wireless Mode Station-Pseudobridge-Clone

This mode works in a similar fashion to the station-pseudobridge mode, with the exception that the station's wireless card connects to the access point using the MAC address of the first frame that passes through the device. In the case of a laptop being connected to the bridged station, this means the access point would see the MAC address of the laptop rather than the actual station's wireless card, hence the name "clone".

Example – Bridge a Station Using Pseudobridge

This example will work for either station-pseudobridge or station-pseudobridge-clone.

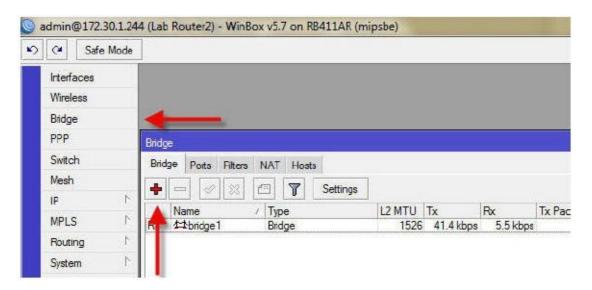
1. To bridge the station device, click the Wireless button and then double click the wireless interface.

5	(M	Safe Mode								
	Interface	BS								
	Wireless	1	←	-						
	Bridge		Wireless Ta	ables						
	PPP		Interfaces	Netreme Dua	Access List	t Registra	tion Con	nect List	Security P	rofiles
	Switch		+-			Scanner	Freq. Us	ane	Alignment	Wire
	Mesh					ocurnor			-	1
	IP	1	Name Www.	200 L	Type Wireless (Ath	eros AR5	L2 MTU 2290	Tx	Rx bps 0	T:) bps
	MPLS	1								
	Routing	1		P						

2. Set the mode to station-pseudobridge or station-pseudobridge-clone mode and click Ok.

terface <wlan1></wlan1>			
General Wireless V	/DS Nstreme NV2 Status	Ι.Ε	ок
Mode:	station pseudobridge	=	Cancel
Band:	2GHz-B/G	F [Apply
Channel Width:	provide and provide a second s	F	Disable
Frequency:	Present and a second se		Comment
0.000	MikroTik		Torch
Scan List: Wireless Protocol:			Scan
Securty Profile:	La construction de la constructi	Ţ	Freq. Usage
Antenna Mode:	Les anno 1997 - Carlos	.	Align
Bridge Mode:	enabled	Ŧ	Sniff

3. Click the bridge button and the plus sign to add a new bridge interface and click Ok.



4. On the Ports tab, click the plus sign and add the Ethernet port to be bridged (typically ether1) to the new bridge you just created and click Ok. Repeat for the wireless

interface.

) a	dmin@	172.30.1.24	4 (Lab Router2)	- WinBox	v5.7 on RB	411AR (mip	osbe)		
0	(24	Safe Mode							
	Interfac	ces							
	Wireles	ss	1						
	Bridge								
	PPP		Bidge	ŝ.					
	Switch		Bridge Ports	Filters N	AT Hosts				
	Mesh			1					
	IP	1							11
	MPLS	٢	A Interface		Bridge bridge1	Ph	ority (h 80	and the forest and a feature of the feature of	Horizon
	Routing	g N	I ⊈wlan1		bridge1		80		
	System	ı N							

The station is now bridged.

For Further Study: It is also possible to bridge two devices using a PPP tunnel, EoIP tunnel, or VPLS.

Supporting Mixed Clients, Routed Stations and Bridged Stations

Once WDS bridging is set up on an access point as demonstrated on page 242, it is possible to support both routed stations and bridged stations that have been configured using the transparent bridging method. This is a good scenario for Internet service providers as it gives them several different customer configurations they can offer.

For example, if a customer wants a standard, managed connection, using a routed station, firewalling, private addressing on the LAN, public addressing on the WAN, and the ability to support destination NAT for inbound services to servers on the LAN, this is all possible using a standard routed station. If the access point is configured with support for WDS clients as outlined on page 242, that makes it possible to offer an alternate configuration on the same access point for non-managed clients. For example, if a client wants to run their own router and firewall and have it receive a public IP address via your PPPoE server, again that can be done by configuring that station in station-wds mode. Since the AP supports both WDS and non-WDS clients, one access point can support either configuration and neither of these scenarios require station-pseudobridge mode, although that is still supported.

WDS, Wireless Distribution System

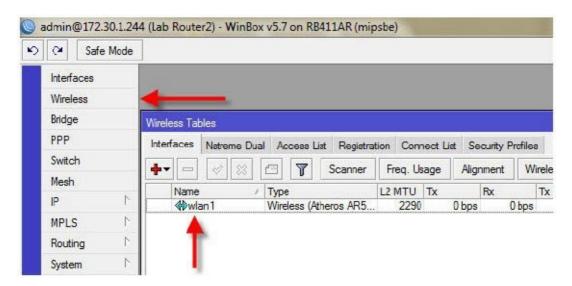
In some scenarios, it is desired to provide wireless access, yet it is not possible to get network cabling in place to the access point. This scenario lends itself well to a protocol called WDS. We have previously used a function of this protocol to create a transparent wireless bridge, yet the true power of WDS is the application just described. In a WDS system, each access point serves double duty in that it acts as both an access point and a station at the same time. This is both helpful and hurtful at the same time so let me explain. By design, 802.11 devices are half-duplex, meaning they cannot transmit and receive at the same time. By contrast, modern Ethernet devices are typically full duplex, meaning they can transmit and receive at the same time, which explains why a 100 Mb Ethernet device can transfer data at line speed, both directions, simultaneously. You get the idea. Wireless devices with a single transmitter must either be in transmit mode or receive mode but not both simultaneously, which explains why a device connected at 54 Mbps will only maintain about half that in one direction and one fourth if passing data both directions simultaneously.

In a WDS system, if a device is both a station and an AP at the same time, the total throughput of the system will be reduced by a factor of about one half when a second device is added to the system. That trend continues as more devices are added until the system grinds to a screeching halt. That being said, a few devices in WDS will perform quite well for client Internet access where you are typically trying to deliver a few megs to each client, and in that situation, a two or three node WDS system running 802.11g is quite adequate. The same system running 802.11n with dual chains becomes substantially more robust and expandable before this throughput "wall" is reached.

Example – Build a WDS System

To build any WDS system requires a bridge interface. It is not mandatory that the Ethernet interface be added to this bridge, so the AP can still be a routed device. However, a bridge interface is a requirement for the wireless portion of the configuration. In this example, we want to build a WDS system that will both extend our network to a second AP and allow non-WDS clients to connect to an access point in the WDS system and get Internet access.

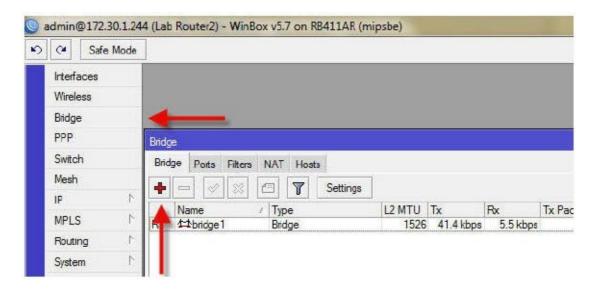
1. In WinBox, click on the Wireless button and then double click the wireless interface to view its properties.



2. On the wireless tab, set the mode to ap-bridge, the Frequency to a free frequency and the SSID to something of your choice, in this case we will use "MikroTik" as the SSID.

iterface <wlan1></wlan1>			Ē
General Wireless W	DS Nstreme NV2 Status		ок
Mode:	ap bridge	Ŧ	Cancel
Band:	2GHz-B/G	•	Apply
Channel Width:	20MHz	Ŧ	Disable
Frequency:	2412	MHz	Comment
SSID:	MkroTik		. .
Scan List:	default	-	Torch
Wireless Protocol:	802.11	Ŧ	Scan
Security Profile:	default	Ŧ	Freq. Usage
Antenna Mode:	antenna a	Ŧ	Algn
Bridge Mode:	enabled	-	Sniff

3. Create a new bridge interface and click Ok.



4. On the ports tab, add the wireless interface to the bridge and click Ok.

ତ 🍳 Safe	Mode						
Interfaces							
Wireless		1					
Bridge		1					
PPP	Brid	ige					
Switch	Br	idge Ports	Fiters NA	T Hosts			
Mesh			20	T			
IP	N -		d housed housed	LuCal	0	D. II. C. I	
MPLS	N 14	Interface	and the second se	idge idge1	Priority (h 80	Path Cost	Horizor
Routing	8						
System	E.						

5. Back on the wireless interface list, double click the wireless interface and on the WDS tab, select WDS Mode as dynamic and WDS Default Bridge as the bridge you created, typically bridge1.

nterface <wlan1></wlan1>	6		
Wireless WDS	Nstreme NV2 Status		ОК
WDS M	ode: dynamic	•	Cancel
WDS Default Bri	dge: bridge1		Apply
	[Disable	
		Ī	Comment

6. Repeat steps 1 through 5 for the second device in the WDS system. Note, it is essential that you set the SSID and the frequency to the same settings for all devices to participate in the WDS system or they will not associate.

7. Once the wireless interfaces are associated and the WDS interfaces are dynamically created, you can configure the device as either a routed access point as shown on page 222 or add the AP's Ethernet interface to the bridge you just created and push the Layer 3 services to another router in the network.

NV2- Nstreme Version Two

Nstreme Version Two is one of the most exciting features to be added to RouterOS. Nstreme version two or NV2 is it is called, is a TDMA or the Time Domain Multiple Access protocol, meaning wireless stations are allowed to transmit during a specific time slice and only then. This negates the need for a station to "listen" before it transmits, as is the case with conventional 802.11, which uses CDMA or Carrier Sense Multiple Access and greatly improves the speed and scalability of the network. TDMA has only been available in very expensive devices in the past, so this was a welcomed addition to RouterOS.

"TDMA media access technology solves hidden node problems and improves media usage, thus improving throughput and latency, especially in PtMP networks." ¹ So the question is, why would you want to use the NV2 protocol in your network? I would pose the question, why would you not want to use NV2? The benefits are higher throughput, longer links, and improved stability in noisy environments, lower latency, and no hidden node effect and reduced frame overhead. The only reason for not using NV2 is the incompatibility with standard 802.11 devices in a mixed network of RouterOS and non-RouterOS devices.

Example – Converting an 802.11n PtMP System to NV2

In this example we will take an imaginary service provider or WISP network tower, running 802.11n protocol with all RouterOS stations, and convert it to NV2. The goal is to improve performance of the network without substantial customer downtime.

Note: Although the method described herein is accurate, there is always the chance a station will not re-associate with the access point or that an upgrade could fail. Therefore, understand this risk before you begin and perform the operation inside your standard maintenance window.

1. Step one is to ensure every station is running the latest version of RouterOS, so we

will upgrade each station on the access point using the technique previously described on page 48.

2. Once all stations have been upgraded and rebooted, they should still be associated with the access point.

3. Next, upgrade the access point to the latest version as previously described.

4. Next, WinBox to each station and click the Wireless button and double click the wireless interface.

5 (24	Safe Mode									
Interfaces Wireless										
		←	-							
Bridg	e	Wireless Table:	5							
PPP		Interfaces N	streme Dua	Access L	st Registra	tion Con	nect Lie	t Se	curity Pr	rofilea
Swite	h	+			Scanner	Freq. Us	ane	Alian	nment	Wirek
Mesh					oddimor		-			
IP	1	Name	1	Type Wireless (At	heros AR5	L2 MTU 2290	Tx	0 bps	Rx	Tx bps
MPL	s ト			Trincicas ()	101037113	LLUU		0 003		bp3
Routi	ng N									
	0.500 0.000									

5. On the wireless tab, change the protocol to "nv2 nstreme 802.11" and click OK. This ensures that the station will re-associate now and after you have converted the access point to NV2.

terface <wlan1></wlan1>			
ionatal Wireless W	DS Natreme NV2 Status .	. [ОК
Mode:	station	.	Cancel
Band:	2GHz-B/G	•	Apply
Channel Width:	20MHz	Ŧ	Disable
Frequency:	Land I	MHz	Comment
SSID:	MikroTik		Torch
Scan List:	default		Scan
Wireless Protocol:	nv2nstreme 802.11	Ŧ	Freq. Usage
Securty Profile:		₹	Alian
Antenna Mode:			Sniff
Bridge Mode:	enabled	Ŧ	J(101

6. Once all stations have been set this way, WinBox to the access point. On the wireless tab, set the protocol to NV2.

erface <wlan1></wlan1>			
ionoral Wireless W	DS Nstreme NV2 Status		ок
Mode:	ap bidge	•	Cancel
Band:	2GHz-B/G	F	Apply
Channel Width:	20MHz	•	Disable
Frequency:		MHz	Comment
	MikroTik	•	Torch
Scan List:	La seconda da compositiva da Compositiva da compositiva da compositiva da compositiva da compositiva da compositiva da compositiva da compos		Scan
Wireless Protocol: Securty Profile:		Ŧ	Freq. Usage
Antenna Mode:	Les secondes de la companya de la co	Ţ	Align
Bridge Mode:	enabled	Ŧ	Sniff

7. On the NV2 tab, set the cell radius to a value equal to the distance to the farthest client on this AP in kilometers.

nterface <wlan1></wlan1>			
Wireless WDS 1	NV2 Status Traffic	l [ОК
TDMA Period Size:	E	ms	Cancel
Cell Radius:	30	km [Apply
Preshared Key:	Security	[Disable
	L		Comment
Queue Count:	L State		Torch
QoS:	default	I₹	Scan

8. Once you click OK, all clients should re-associate in NV2 mode and you should have a stable TDMA network.

For Further Study: NV2 supports its own security which can be set by checking the Security box on the NV2 tab and setting a "Preshared Key" on both the access point and all stations. This will further enhance the security of your wireless network.

Example – Hiding the SSID

To hide the SSID from prying eyes:

1. In WinBox, click the Wireless button and double click the wireless interface.

Interfaces		22		
Wieless ┥	-	Wire	less Tal	bles
Bridge		Inte	afaces	Nstreme Dua
PPP				
Switch			Name	ال أغداد ال
Mesh		R	W wi	
IP	È.			
MPLS	6			

2. On the wireless tab, check the box "hide SSID".

General Wireless W	DS Nstreme NV2 Status .		ОК
Mode:	ap bidge	Ŧ	Cancel
Band:	2GHz-B/G	Ŧ	Apply
Channel Width:	20MHz	₹	Dsable
Frequency:	2412 ∓	MHz	Comment
SSID:	MikroTik] *	
Scan List:	default	•	Torch
Wireless Protocol:	802.11	Ŧ	Scan
Security Profile:	default	Ŧ	Freq. Usage
Antenna Mode:	antenna a	Ŧ	Align
Bridge Mode:	enabled	Ŧ	Sniff
Default AP Tx Rate:			Snooper
		bps	Reset Configuration
Default Client Tx Rate:		bps	Advanced Mode
	Default Authenticate		Advanced Mode
	Default Forward		
-	Hide SSID		

Chapter 16 – Routing

In simplest terms, routing is the process that determines the interface through which a packet leaves a router. Routing takes place at Layer 3 and the process is governed by a list of rules called routes. When a packet enters the routing process, the router looks at the destination IP address of the packet and then compares that address to the route rules to determine where to send the packet.

There are some basic rules that govern simple routing. First, routers can only send packets to routers they are directly connected to. By directly connected, I am describing two routers with a Layer 1 connection, such as an Ethernet cable or wireless link connecting them, both of whose interfaces are configured with IP addresses on the same subnet. Understanding this term "directly connected" is essential in understanding IP routing. Secondly, routers have to "trust" that the router to which they send a packet can ultimately get the packet to its final destination. To explain this "trust" relationship, consider the following example:

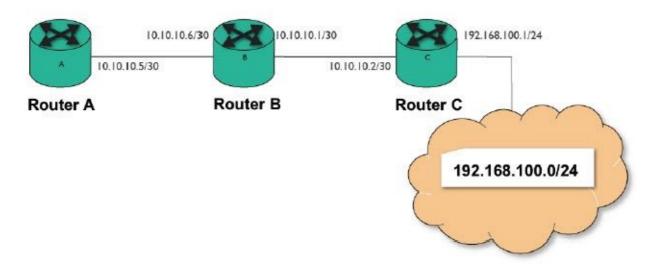


Figure 12 - Routing Diagram

Router A needs to send a packet to the 192.168.100.0/24 subnet, which is directly connected, to Router C. Since A is not directly connected to C, it must send the packet to B and "trust" B can get the packet to its final destination. Why does it send the packet to B? Because Router A's routing table or routing "rules" tell it that Router B is the gateway for the 192.168.100.0/24 subnet. With routing, there is no "leap frogging", meaning that A must send the packet to B who sends the packet to C and A can not "leap frog" over B and send packets directly to C.

This concept of sending packets to an adjacent or directly connected router is referred to as the "next hop", which is descriptive of a packet hopping from Router A and then to Router B and Router C and finally to the destination subnet. In this scenario the next hop for router A is Router B.

Simple Static Routes

With a basic understanding of how routing works, let's explore the rules that routers use, specifically the routing table. In RouterOS, the routing table is found in WinBox by clicking IP and Routes.

Mesh	
Ib 🛛	ARP
MPLS	Accounting
Routing	Addresses
System 🗅	DHCP Client
Queues	DHCP Relay
Files	DHCP Server
Log	DNS
Radius	Firewall
Tools 🗅	Hotspot
New Terminal	IPsec
Make Supout.rif	Neighbors
Manual	Packing
Exit	Pool
	Routes

The routing table looks like this:

Ro	utes Nexthops Rul	es VRF				
÷		7		Find	all	•
1	Dst. Address	Gateway	Distance	Routing Mark	Pref. Sour	ce •
AS	0.0.0/0	66.76.13.1 reachable ether1	1			
DA	66.76.13.0/24	ether1 reachable	0		66.76.13.1	0
DA	▶ 192.168.101.0/24	bridge1 reachable	0		192.168.10	01.1

In every route there are two key pieces of information, the destination address and the gateway. The destination address is the network that contains the host we are trying to send a packet to and the gateway is the router that knows how to route the packet to its destination. It is feasible that the destination address could be a single host address. In this scenario, we would need one route for every single host we ever wanted to reach. In the case of an IPV4 Internet connected router, that would be nearly a billion host routes one for every host on the Internet. Obviously this is unreasonable, so we always use network routes as our destination address.

Most Specific Route

It is important to interject here that there is an additional rule for routes we must consider. When a router has multiple routes to get to the same destination, the router will use the most specific route. By most specific, I am referring to the size of the range of the IP addresses in the destination network. Consider the following routes:

# Destination Address	Gateway
0 192.168.1.0/24	10.0.0.1
1 192.168.1.0/30	10.0.0.2

In this example, the router wants to send a packet to 192.168.1.1. That host address is defined by the IP address range of route 0 and the range of route 1, meaning that 192.168.1.0/30 includes the host addresses .1 and .2 while 192.168.1.0/24 includes the host addresses .1 through .254. Since the smaller range is that defined in route 1, route 1 is the most specific and therefore the packet will be sent to 10.0.0.2. The concept of "most specific route" is very important for understanding the routing decision.

Default Routes

A default route is best described by borrowing the phrase "gateway of last resort" from a competitive router operating system. I like this phrase because what it tells me is that if the router doesn't have a route for a packet that fits into one of the destination network routes in our table, we send that packet to the gateway of last resort or default route.

Examining the default route, the destination address is always 0.0.0.0/0 which matches everything, therefore, if this is the only route in the routing table, then all packets will be sent to the default route. If there are other, more specific routes to the desired destination, those will take precedence over the default route.

Example - Tying it All Together With Static Routes

By now you should understand the basic rules of static routing:

- 1. Routers must route packets using gateways that are directly connected.
- 2. Routers must "trust" adjacent or directly connected routers, that is, they are able to get the packet to its final destination.
- 3. With simple static routes we cannot "leap frog" to our destination.

With these three pieces of information, we can now apply this knowledge to a real life scenario.

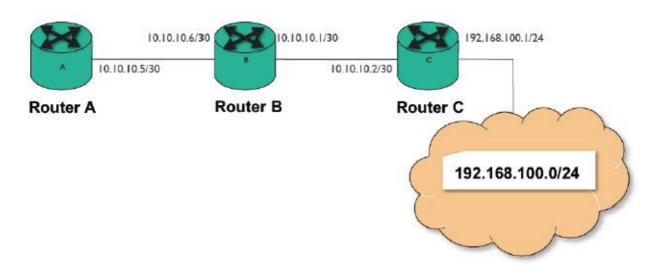


Figure 13 - Routing Diagram

In the above diagram, we have a system of three routers with no routes. The goal is to add enough static routes to each router so that the hosts in the subnet at the far right reach every router in the network and so that every router can reach the other routers as well as the hosts in the 192 subnet. The only default route we will use is configured on the hosts in the subnet at the far right, so all other devices must have a complete routing table.

All routes will be written in the format Destination Network and Gateway.

Solving first for router A:

#	Destination Network	Gateway	
0	10.10.10.0/30	10.10.10.6	
1	192.168.100.0/24	10.10.10.6	

Looking at these routes, what you see is the embodiment of our three routing rules. In route 0, Router A only references a gateway to which it is directly connected. Router B's 10.10.10.6 address is directly connected to Router A and on the same subnet as Router A's 10.10.10.5 address, so the first rule is satisfied. Secondly, Router A trusts that Router B can get the packet to the destination network, it has no way to ensure that, it only trusts it is so. Thirdly, we aren't leapfrogging because B is only one hop away from A. The second route, route 1, satisfies the same rules and enables Router A to send packets to the192 subnet. This completes Router A's routing table.

Router B will also need a static route, so let's list it now:

#	Destination Network	Gateway	
1	192.168.100.0/24	10.10.10.2	

The first question you may ask is why does Router B only need one route? That is a good question, however, it is easily answered because Router B is in a unique position in that it is directly connected to both Routers A and C, therefore no static routes are needed. Router B

can ping both Router A and Router C because they are one hop away, so it only needs a route to the 192 subnet.

Router C is in a situation similar to Router B. It is directly connected to the 192 subnet, so no static routes need to be added. It is also directly connected to Router B so no static routes are needed there either. It only needs one static route to Router A as follows:

#	Destination Network	Gateway	
1	10.10.10.4/30	10.10.10.1	

The only other question that might remain in your mind is why are we using the network addresses like 10.10.10.4/30 instead of the host IP addresses like 10.10.10.5 or 10.10.10.6? If you remember back at the beginning of this chapter, we discussed that although you could add a route for every single host IP on the network, to do so would be a waste of time because network references include many hosts rather than a single host. In this example,

10.10.10.4/30 includes 10.10.10.5 and 10.10.10.6 so packets to either IP address would be included in that single route.

Route Distance

There is an additional piece of information in a route that we can use to influence how the device treats the routes. This attribute is called "distance" or "cost". Distance is an arbitrary value assigned to the route so that if there are multiple routes to the same destination, they can be ordered (prioritized) by their distance, meaning a route with a lower distance takes priority over a route with a higher distance. By default, certain distances are applied to routes by the router. These distances can be changed to alter how a route is treated. Consider the following routing table:

#	Destination Address	Gateway	Distance
0	192.168.1.0/24	10.0.0.1	10
1	192.168.1.0/24	10.0.1.1	20

There are two routes here to the same destination with different gateways. In this scenario, since route 0 has a lower distance (sometimes called cost), it will be the active route and route 1 will be inactive. In the routing table this will be evidenced by the active route being displayed in black, and the inactive route(s) displayed in blue as shown below.

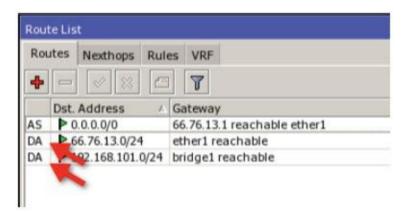
Ro	utes Nexthops Rules	VRF		-	
÷	- * * 🗅	7	Active		
1	Dst. Address	Gateway		Distance	Routing Mark
DA	0.0.0/0	10.0.25.1 reachable bridge1		0	
DA	▶ 10.0.0/24	bridge1 reachable		0	
DA	▶ 10.0.1.0/24	bridge1 reachable		0	
DA	▶ 10.0.25.0/24	bridge1 reachable		0	
AS	▶ 192.168.1.0/24	10.0.0.1 reachable bridge1		10	
S	▶ 192.168.1.0/24 ◀	10.0.1.1 reachable bridge1		20	

Also note that the routing flags will designate the active route(s) as "A" for active. If the interface for the active route is disabled or loses its link, that route will become inactive and the route via gateway 10.0.1.1 will become the active route. This is a simple way to provide some basic redundancy but it relies on the interface to actually go down for the active route to become inactive.

For Further Study: An additional feature called "check gateway" can be enabled on the active route to constantly check that not only is the interface active, but that the gateway on the other end is reachable. This further enhances this type of failover configuration.

Dynamic Routes

Routes can be added to the routing table manually (static routes) or dynamically. Dynamic routes can either be added by a dynamic routing protocol or by the operating system as a part of the normal configuration of an IP address. Specifically, when you add an IP address to the router, it dynamically creates a companion route to tell the router on which interface to look for other hosts on that subnet.



In the above illustration, there are two dynamic routes designated by the routing flag "D", both of which are active, designated by the letter "A". Notice that the gateway for both routes is an interface rather than a host address. The reason is that these routes were dynamically added by the system in response to the configuration of an IP address. Now the router knows that other hosts on the 192.168.101.0/24 subnet will be found on interface bridge1 and similarly, hosts on the 66.76.13.0/24 subnet are found on interface ether1.

Routing Flags

In the previous illustration, to the left of each route in the route list there is a flag or group of letters that describes the state or origin of the route. In this example, the flags "A", "S", and "D" stand for Active, Static, and Dynamic, respectfully. There are several other routing flags in RouterOS. Those that appear below in bold are those most common.

X – Disabled, not active

A – Active, in use

D – Dynamic, received from a dynamic routing protocol or added by the operating system

C – Connected, a directly connected host route

S – Static, added manually

- R RIP route, received from the routing information protocol
- B BGP, received from the border gateway protocol

O – Received from the open shortest path first protocol

- M Received from the mesh made easy protocol
- B Blackhole route, packets are silently discarded
- U Unreachable, discards the packets and sends an ICMP unreachable messages

P – Prohibit, discards packet and sends an ICMP communication administratively prohibited message

OSPF – A Dynamic Routing Protocol

OSPF or Open Shortest Path First is the name of a simple to configure yet robust routing protocol anyone can implement and should implement in their networks as they grow past a single router. OSPF routers dynamically trade routing information as well as the state of the links that join routers together and thereby determine the best path between routers. If a path becomes unreachable, they adjust their routes accordingly to maintain the reachability of all hosts in the OSPF cloud.

OSPF provides two main benefits. First is the automatic propagation of routes in a network and the second is failover to ensure the reliability of an IP network.

In this book, we will explore the basics of the OSPF protocol and learn how to create basic OSPF networks that will provide all the routes necessary for the networks to operate without using static routes.

Link State Protocol

The basic communication of an OSPF network is done using the link state protocol. This protocol begins working when two routers in a network are similarly configured with OSPF and the first OSPF packet is sent. This packet is called a "hello packet". The hello packet is the first phase of the OSPF neighbor negotiation.

The second phase is called the link state advertisement or LSA. This communication involves sending a list of all the OSPF neighbors the router has learned. This link state information is sent by "flooding" LSA's (Link State Announcements) or sending the LSA's to every OSPF interface on the router. If a router receives a packet already seen, it is discarded so the router only processes new LSA's.

Once a router has learned all of its neighbors and all the neighbors they know, it builds a Link State Database. Once the link state database is fully populated, the routers begin the final and most complex portion of the process, calculating the routes. This particular algorithm originally proposed by Dutch computer scientist Edsger Dijkstra². Dijkstra's Algorithm works by constructing a tree of the network. The tree's root is the system performing the calculations and its branches are linked to other systems. The result is the shortest path to each router in the system. If a link fails, all routers in the system must perform a new set of calculations and this results in utilizing router resources³. Networks with unstable links are not good candidates for OSPF as the constant recalculation of these routes can utilize a large amount of resources. The network should be stabilized before configuring OSPF.

Areas

The concept of OSPF areas is included in the advanced RouterOS certifications and associated training but a basic discussion is necessary for purposes of the configurations discussed in this book. The purpose of OSPF areas is to organize or group OSPF routers in logical divisions in the network. These divisions are typically made with some basis of geography, proximity, or function. OSPF routers are typically all contained within one AS or Autonomous System. In simple terms, an AS is a group of routers controlled or owned by a single entity. When the number of routers within that AS becomes too large or unwieldy, it can be broken up into smaller groups or OSPF areas.

By default, there is an OSPF area named backbone. For purposes of a small OSPF network, all routers can be made members of the backbone area. As the network groups, additional areas will become desirable, but these areas will continue to have some attachment to this backbone area.

When a new area is created and routers are assigned to this area, they operate as standard OSPF routers flooding their LSA's, building their databases, and performing their route calculations. This information is only shared with other routers in their particular area (if there are multiple areas). If one router in the area is also connected to the special area called backbone, it becomes a special type of router called an ABR or Area Border Router. The ABR is special in that it participates in normal OSPF functions inside its area but on the backbone interface it only sends a special type of LSA called a summary LSA. The summary

LSA summarizes the routes to the routers in its area. The primary purpose of areas is to partition the network so that the size of the database is kept to a manageable size and router resources are conserved because the number of LSA's is reduced.

Configuring OSPF

In RouterOS, the first step to configuring OSPF is the addition of a network statement. Although the process sounds confusing, the goal is to determine which interface or interfaces OSPF should use to find other OSPF routers. OSPF determines the interface or interfaces through the network statement, using it to find an IP address that falls within that network subnet and then determines on which interface that IP address is bound. In summary, OSPF is looking for other OSPF routers. It will only find them on the interfaces where you want it to look and it will determine which interfaces those are based upon the network address and then finding on which interface that IP address is bound.

Once a network statement is entered, the router dynamically creates an OSPF interface. This is the interface where it looks for other OSPF speaking routers. OSPF starts working immediately when the network statement is added but no routes are exchanged until we tell OSPF what to share or redistribute.

Redistribution is configured in the Instance tab, by telling OSPF to redistribute connected routes, static routes, default routes or routes learned through other processes like RIP or BGP.

Generally, you will want to redistribute connected and static routes. By redistributing connected routes, any time you configure a new IP address on your router, that network route will be sent to the remainder of the area thereby telling them "I am the way to get to this subnet". Do you need to add a new /24 to your router to serve new clients? Instead of adding tons of static routes to every router in your network, simply add the IP address and the route is built and redistributed automatically by OSPF.

The final piece of information involves redistribution of the default route. If you check the box to redistribute default route, the router will send the default to other routers in the area. Typically, there are only one or two routes in the area that are actually connected to the default gateway so those will be the only two routers to redistribute default. With two Internet connected routers, both redistributing default, you can create a fault tolerant network with automatic failover if one default gateway fails.

Example – Add a Static Route

Adding a static route is very simple. The goal of a static route is to tell this router how to get to other networks. In this example, we want to add a route to get packets to the 192.168.1.0/24 network. This router is directly connected to another router that is directly connected to this target subnet. The route is added as follows:

1. In WinBox, click IP and Routes.

IF	1	ARP	
MPLS	1	Accounting	
Routing	1	Addresses	
System	1	DHCP Client	
Queues		DHCP Relay	
Files		DHCP Server	
Log		DNS	
Radius		Firewall	
Tools	1	Hotspot	
New Termin	al	IPsec	
MetaROUT	ER	Neighbors	
Make Supor	fir th	Packing	
Manual		Pool	110
Exit		Routes	4

2. Click the plus sign and enter the destination address of 192.168.1.0/24.

Route Ust Routes Nexthops Rules VRF					
		F	ind	all	•
Dst. Address / Gateway	Distance	Routing Mark	Pref. S	ource	-
S ≥ 0.0.0.0/0 172.30.1.1 reachable ether1 C ≥ 172.30.1.0/24 ether1 reachable	1		172.30).1.244	-
New Route	(1)				
General Attributes					
Dst. Address: 192.168.1.0/24 Gateway:	-				
a					
Check Gateway:					

3. On the gateway blank, type 10.0.0.2 which is the IP address of the directly connected router that is attached to our router as well as the destination subnet.

General	Attributes			
Dst. A	Address:	92.168.1.0/24		
G	ateway:	0.0.0.2	-	
Check G	ateway:			
	Type:	inicast		

4. Click Ok.

Example – Add a Default Route

Adding a default route is exactly like a static route. The goal of a default route is to give the router a place to send all packets for which it does not have a specific route. This router is

directly connected to another router that is connected to the Internet. The route is added as follows:

1. In WinBox, click IP and Routes.

IP	1	ARP	
MPLS	1	Accounting	
Routing	1	Addresses	
System	۲.	DHCP Client	
Queues		DHCP Relay	
Files		DHCP Server	
Log		DNS	
Radius		Firewall	
Tools	1	Hotspot	
New Termin	al	IPsec	
MetaROUT	ER	Neighbors	
Make Supo	ut rif	Packing	
Manual		Pool	
Exit		Routes	

2. Click the plus sign and do not enter a destination address as the default of 0.0.0/0 matches all packets and is used for the default route.

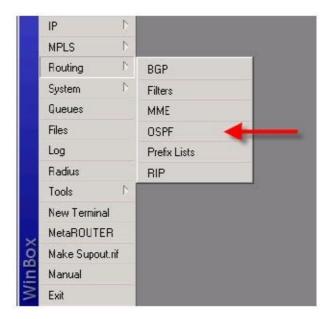
Route Lis	t				
Routes	Nexthops Rules	VRF			
+ -		7			
		ateway		Distance	Ro
DAC P	New Route				
	General Attribut	es			
	Dist. Address:	0.0.0.0/0			
	Gateway:	10.0.0.1	Ŧ		
	Check Gateway:				
	Туре:	unicast			
	Distance:				

- 3. On the gateway blank, type 10.0.0.1 which is the IP address of the Internet router.
- 4. Click OK.

Example – Set up OSPF, the Basics

While static routes are just as effective as dynamic routes, the use of a dynamic routing protocol like OSPF is the basis of a scalable and mature network that can easily grow without an excessive administrative burden. To set up a basic single area OSPF network, proceed as follows:

1. In WinBox, click Routing and then OSPF.



2. Assume we are building a network according to the following diagram. Even though our router has several interfaces and numerous IP addresses, we have selected a management network on which we will run OSPF. These networks all fall within 10.10.10.X/X.

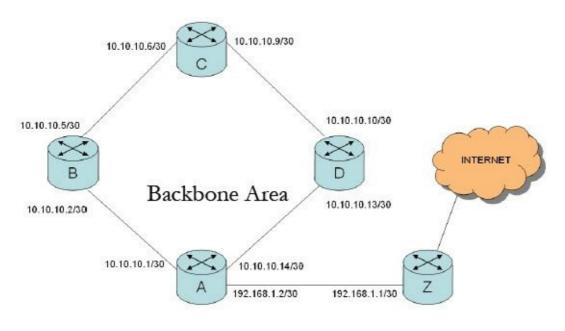
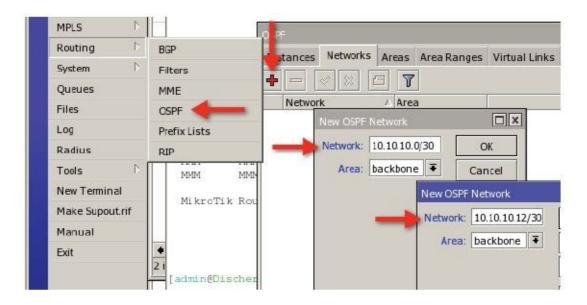


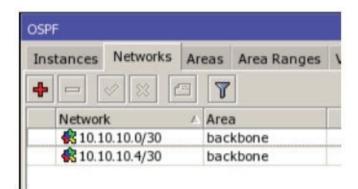
Figure 14 - OSPF Network

3. Now consider router A. It has multiple interfaces with multiple subnets, but we only want to run OSPF with neighbors B, C, and D and not Z. To do this, click on the Networks tab and then the plus sign. Enter the network address of the network on which you will run OSPF. Notice we do not add the 192.168.1.0/30 network as we do not want OSPF configured on that interface.

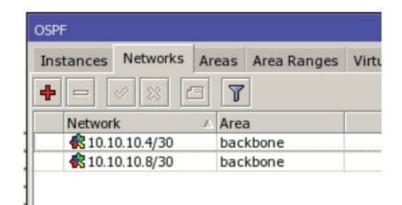


Repeat the process of adding the network statements for routers B, C, and D as you did router A. Each should be configured as follows when you are done:

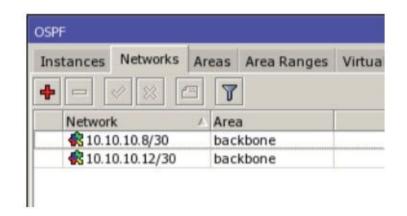
Router B



Router C



Router D

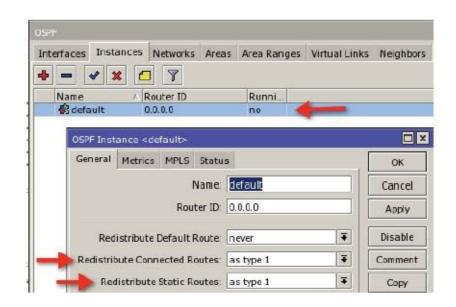


4. Once the network statements are added, OSPF starts working. Now we need to tell it what to redistribute and this is done on the Instances tab by changing the default instance. For Router A, we want to redistribute static routes, connected routes and default route because router A is the only gateway for our network to get to the Internet. For routers B, C, and D, we only redistribute static and connected routes. For this small network with a single area, we can use Type I or Type II redistribution.

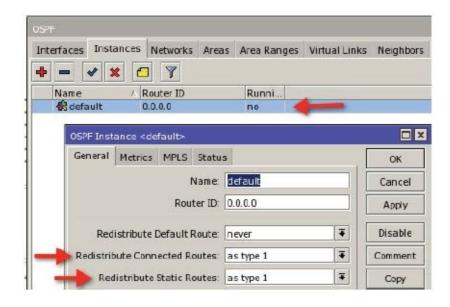
Configure the instances on all four routers as follows:

Router A

	Prove 1		
Name Router ID	Runni		
OSPF Instance <default></default>			
General Metrics MPLS Statu	s		ОК
Name:	default		Cancel
Router ID:	0.0.0.0		Apply
Redistribute Default Route:	always (as type 1)	Ŧ	Disable
Redistribute Connected Routes:	as type 1	₹	Commen
Redistribute Static Routes:	as type 1	Ŧ	Сору
Redistribute RIP Routes:	no	₹	Remove
Redistribute BGP Routes:	no	₹	
item Redistribute Other OSPF Routes:	no	₹	
In Filter:	ospf-in	Ŧ	
Out Filter:	ospf-out	Ŧ	



Router C



Router D

SPF					
Interfaces Inst	ances Networks	Areas	Area Ranges	Virtual Links	s Neighbo
+ - + 1					
Name	A Router ID		Runni		
🔗 default	0.0.0.0		no		
OSPF Inst	ance <default></default>				
General	Metrics MPLS	Status			ОК
	N	ame:	lefault		Cancel
	Rout	er ID: [).0.0.0		Apply
Red	istribute Default R	oute:	never	Ŧ	Disable
neu					-
	bute Connected Ro	utes: a	as type 1	Ŧ	Comment

Check the routing table now and you should now see routes to all of the networks configured on all four routers as well as a default route.

For Further Study:

- 1. As networks grow, multiple areas can enhance network performance by reducing the size of the database and make the network more scalable. Consider dividing the network into multiple areas once you understand the OSPF basics.
- 2. Using Type I or Type II redistribution is appropriate for multiple areas. With more experience in using OSPF, consider changing redistribution types as appropriate to engineer traffic flow.
- 3. You should also consider using authentication between your OSPF routers to enhance security as well as using passive interfaces and setting a designated router through the priority setting.

Chapter 17 – VPN Tunnels

General

VPN tunnels or Virtual Private Network tunnels are a method of spanning diverse networks in a manner to allow two network devices to communicate with one another as if they were on the same local area network. Imagine if you will a crowded room full of noisy people with two people on opposite ends of the room that need to communicate with each other. By stretching a pipe across the room and each person speaking into or listening to the end of the pipe, the two would be able to communicate with each other in the noisy, crowded room as if they were the only ones in the room. This analogy roughly describes a VPN tunnel, where the two people wanting to communicate are the tunnel end point hosts and the crowded, noisy room is the public Internet. In an actual VPN tunnel, the traffic would follow the same path as other traffic through the Internet, but would be encapsulated or possibly encrypted. When the packet reaches its destination at the remote end of the tunnel, it is unencrypted and sent to its destination.

The most common use of VPN's is for remote hosts to "dial in" to an office network, thereby allowing the remote device to reach office resources such as printers or file servers as if it was located on the same private local area network. The transport network becomes invisible to the remote host and it operates as if it were only one hop away from the office, even though there may be many router hops in between.

Tunnels are either Layer 2 or Layer 3 in design, that is, packets are either carried through the tunnel by routing or by switching. PPtP or Point to Point Tunneling Protocol is one example of a Layer 3 tunnel while EoIP is an example of a Layer 2 tunnel. With a Layer 3 tunnel, routers on the end points make the decision about which packets to send across the tunnel but with Layer 2 tunnels, all packets are sent through the tunnel like a switch (unless there are Layer 2 filters in place to prevent certain types of traffic).

Another application of VPN tunnels is to connect two networks together through the public Internet. A company may have two or more locations across the world and by using VPN tunnels, they can tie all these locations together as if they were on the same LAN. This allows hosts in all remote locations to use services behind the company firewall in an unimpeded manner.

In this book, we will explore five different types of tunnels:

- 1. **PPTP** The Point to Point Tunneling Protocol is supported in RouterOS as both client and server. The server would be suitable for a central location and will support a mixture of Windows clients, Mac OSX clients, MikroTik routers, or any other standards based PPTP client. This is also an easy tunnel to set up between two routers and is a Layer 3 tunnel.
- 2. **L2TP** The Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol is also supported and the setup is exactly the same as PPTP.

- 3. **EoIP** Ethernet over Internet Protocol is a Layer 2 tunnel and can be bridged to provide a quick and easy method of bridging two networks together over the Internet at Layer 2, however it provides no encryption.
- 4. **MPLS/VPLS** Multiprotocol Label Switching and Virtual Private LAN Service are powerful protocols that help you create complex and scalable provider networks. By using some basic features of each we can create simple network tunnels.
- 5. **PPPoE** Point to Point Tunneling Protocol over Ethernet is a Layer 3 protocol used by many service providers because of it's ability to restrict network access, use central authentication, and provide automatic provisioning of customers. It is by design a tunnel, but not in the sense of a typical VPN tunnel like PPTP or L2TP in that is not used to "tunnel through" public networks. PPPoE supports a special type of IP addressing called point-to-point addressing. To fully understand how point-to-point addressing is used in PPPoE, lets explore it first.

Point to Point Addressing

When the Internet was first born, there were few hosts and many addresses available. Networks were designed based upon classes. These classes were based upon letter designations such as Class B or Class C networks and the classes were descriptive of the subnet mask that formed the boundaries of the classes. LANS were typically given Class C blocks of addresses and not much thought was given to subnetting or classless networks.

All of this changed as the Internet exploded and we suddenly saw the necessity to become more conservative with our IP space. When we began seeing the future depletion of our IPV4 address space, we progressively transitioned from classfull to classless networks. Soon thereafter, customers were allocated small /30 subnets or something slightly larger instead of entire /24's and networks were masqueraded or source natted behind firewalls. Now that there are few IPV4 blocks available at the time of this writing, providers have become very conservative with their IP allocations and the entire Internet has transitioned to classless provisioning.

As we make the observation of the relationship between subnet prefix and subnet size we see the following mathematical progression:

/24 subnet = 256 addresses including one network address, one broadcast address and 254 host addresses

/25 subnet = 128 addresses including one network address, one broadcast address and 126 host addresses

and so on through

/30 subnet = 4 addresses including one network address, one broadcast address and 2 host addresses

and finally

/32 subnet = 2 addresses including one network address, and 1 host addresses

Note that as we begin splitting subnets, we always half the number of total addresses available. Next, we designate one address for the network address and one for the broadcast and the remainder are host addresses. The pattern seems to change when we get to the /32 subnet or point-to-point addressing. Now, there is only one host address, one network address, and no broadcast address. That is both the complexity and the simplicity of point-to-point addressing.

Point-to-point addressing is used most commonly in PPPoE or Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet configurations so we will use the PPPoE protocol as the basis for our explanation of point-to-point addressing. Using point-to-point addressing, what you find is that the network typically takes on a star topology with respect to multiple hosts with the center of the star, the PPPoE server knowing how to get to every other host. Every address has two pieces of information, the actual host address and network.

Since there is no available address for broadcast, there is no broadcast address. I like to think of point-to-point addressing as a imaginary piece of wire with two ends. Each end has an address (the end point) and a "reminder" of the address of the other end of the wire (the network address). Take a look at this concept graphically in the figure below.

Figure 15 - Point to Point Addressing

The end of our imaginary wire marked "A" has an IP address of 10.0.0.1/32 and a network address of 10.0.0.2, therefore it knows the host at the other end of the imaginary wire has an IP address of 10.0.0.2. The end of the wire marked "B" has an IP address of 10.0.0.2/32 and a network address of 10.0.0.1, therefore it knows the host at the other end of the imaginary wire has an IP address of 10.0.0.1. As you can see, there is no availability of an extra address to use as a broadcast address nor is it needed since each end host already has the information needed to find the other end of the point-to-point connection.

PPPoE – **Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet, Applying PTP Addressing**

You may be wondering how is this useful in a network of more than two hosts? This concept is useful because it can support a large number of hosts in a very scalable star topology as follows:

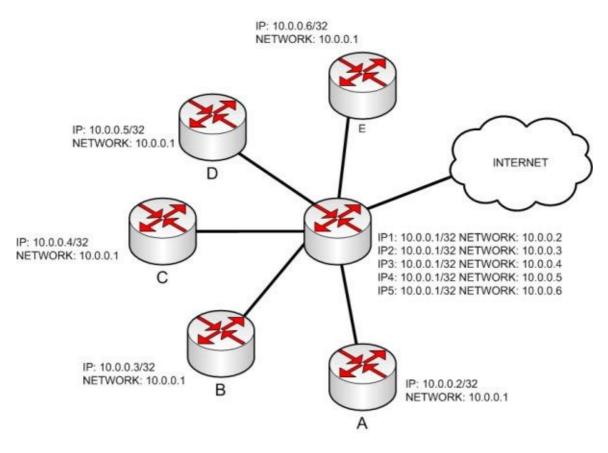


Figure 16 - PPPoE Network

As you can see the configuration is similar to the previous illustration of the "wire", with the exception that there are now 5 "wires" with router Z at the center of the star. The PPPoE concentrator or server, has multiple addresses, each with a network address that matches the host IP address of the other end. It appears that the server has duplicate IP's, but understand, they are really not duplicates since they have different network addresses.

This illustrates one of the attributes of point-to-point addressing and that is the conservation of address space as we are no longer wasting addresses on network and broadcast pairs.

PPPoE uses point to point addressing exclusively, so now that you understand the concept and have been briefly introduced to PPPoE, let's dig in deeper. PPPoE is widely used by large DSL and cable modem providers for some important reasons:

- 1. It provides a scalable way to control network access. Since it is a Layer 2 protocol, it handles IP addresses and default routes in a fashion similar to DHCP so it secures the network.
- 2. It interfaces easily with Radius, a server application widely used since the dialup days that centralizes user access control.
- 3. It allows the return of numerous attributes by the Radius server such as the creation of rate queues, the assignment of IP addresses, and other functions.
- 4. With Radius controlling the network, it is simple to provision new customers and turn off access for those that don't pay their bills.
- 5. And finally, since it uses point-to-point addressing, it conserves IP space.

In this book, we will be using PPPoE server with a local user database and local user profiles. Following this, I will give some topics for further study on extending PPPoE with Radius. Before we begin, a few more necessary pieces to put all of this together.

Example - IP Pools

IP pools are ranges of addresses that can be allocated automatically. These pools were created automatically for us using the DHCP Server setup script on page 170, but they can easily be created manually and used by server processes such as PPPoE server.

1. In WinBox, click the IP button and then select Pools.

IP	\triangleright	ARP
MPLS	Þ	Accounting
Routing	Þ	Addresses
System	Þ	DHCP Clent
Queues		DHCP Relay
Files		DHCP Server
Log		DNS
Radius		Firewall
Tools	Þ	Hotspot
New Terninal		IPsec
MetaROUTER		Neighbors
Make Supout.ri	f	Packing
Manual		Pool
Exit		Routes

2. Click the plus sign to create a new pool.

IP Pool	NC .	
Pools Used Address	292	
+ - 7		Find
A Name	Addresses	Next Pool 💌
New IP Poo	l.	
Name:	pool1	ОК
Addresses:	10.0.0.10-10.0.0.254	Canod
Next Pool:	none 🔻 🔺	Apply
		Сору
		Remove
2		
0 items		
0 items		

The IP range can be any valid range of IP addresses.

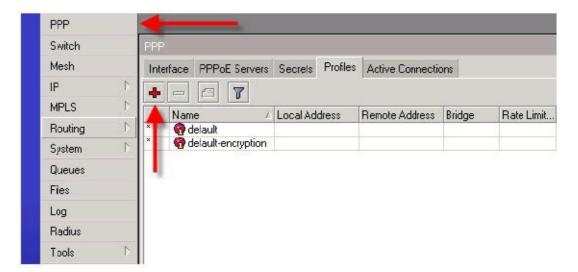
Notice the "Next Pool" pull-down, this can be used to chain pools together so if one pool is depleted, the next pool can be used.

3. Once the pool is created, click OK.

Example - PPP Profiles

PPP profiles are used by all of the PPP based protocols including PPPoE, PPTP and L2TP. The profile is used by the server to cause it to behave based on a policy. It can also be applied to an individual user. We will need a profile to configure PPPoE server so create one now.

1. In WinBox, click the PPP button and select the Profiles tab.



2. Click the plus sign to create a new profile. I suggest you name the profile based on some meaningful criteria, in this case we will call it AP1, meaning it will be used by our access point number 1. The Local Address is the IP used by the point-to-point protocol assigned to this end of the "wire". The remote address is the address to be given to the clients so we want to use the pool we created in the IP Pools example on page 286. The only other setting really required is to set "Change TCP MSS" to "yes". This is necessary to make many secure sites work properly in the client's web browser.

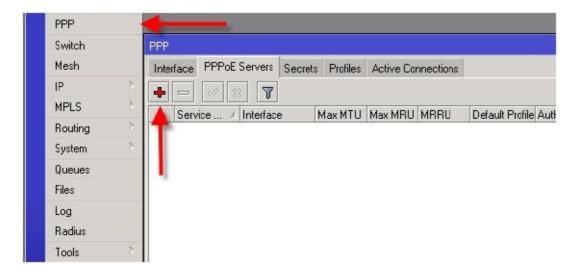
General	Protoco	ls Limits		OK
	Name:	AP1		Cancel
Local /	Address:	10.0.9	•	Apply
Remote /	Address:	pool1	•	Comment
	Bridge:		•	Сору
Incomi	ng Filter:	1	1.	Remove
	ng Filter:		•	
Addr	ess List:]•	
DNS	Server:		-	
WINS	Server:]≑ [
– Change	TCP MS	is		
C de	fault	C no 🔍	yes ┥	-

3. Everything else is optional or geared toward a more complex setup so now click OK and the profile is completed.

Example – Create a PPPoE Server

PPPoE server is the service that handles the incoming clients. It is important to know it is a Layer 2 protocol. This means, it will not work "across" routers, and the interface on which the server is running must be directly connected to the clients. One way to accommodate this across routed networks is to use a Layer 2 tunnel like EoIP or Ethernet over IP.

1. To create the PPPoE Server, in WinBox click the PPP button and select the PPPoE Servers tab.



2. Click the plus sign to create a new instance. The Service name is important because of the ability to run multiple servers on the same interface. When this is the case, the client can be configured to request a specific service name and then that server will

answer that client. If no name is specified on the client and if there are multiple servers, there is no control over which one will answer so keep that in mind. Next, set the interface where it will run. Remember that if you have bridged the physical interface, then the service must run on the bridge so select the bridge instead of the actual interface.

Service Name:	service1		OK.
hterface:	wlan1	₹	Cancel
Max MTU:	1480		Apply
Max MRU:	1480		Disable
MRRU:		-	Сору
Ceepalive Timeout:	<u> </u>	-	Remove
Default Profile:	AP1	₹ Ar Host	-
Max Sessions: Authentication			
 Autrentication — pap 	🗹 chap		
✓ mschap1	✓ mschap2		

3. Finally, select the profile created in the previous example on page 288 and then click OK.

Example – Create a User (Secret)

The final step in the server configuration is the creation of a client user name and password done on the secrets tab.

1. On the Secrets tab, click the plus sign. Fill in the name as the user name and assign a password. I always set the service type because this narrows the scope of the services that can use this secret for authentication.

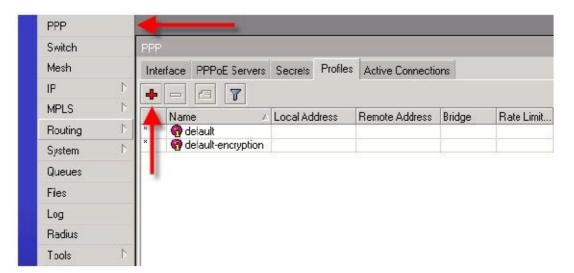
Interface				Connections	
+ -			1	on & Accounting	_
Nar	ne 🔺 Passwor	d Service	Caller ID	Profile	
	New PPP Secret				
	Name:	pcrawford		OK	
	Password:	*******		Cancel	
-	Service:	рррое	Ŧ	Apply	
	Caler ID:		_	Disable	
	Profile:	AP1	Ŧ	Comment	
	Local Address:		-	Сору	
	Remote Address:		·	Remove	
	Routes:		-		_
D items	Limit Byles In:		•	_	
	Limit Bytes Out:		-		

2. All of the other settings are optional so now click OK.

Example – Create a Client Profile

In the same way that profiles can be applied to servers, they can also be applied to PPPoE clients. Typically, this concept us used to assign a static IP to a PPPoE client or to set a rate limit. Creating a rate limit will cause a simple queue to be created for the client when they authenticate.

1. In WinBox, click the PPP button and select the Profiles tab.



2. Click the plus sign to create a new profile. I like to name the profile based on some meaningful criteria, in this case we will call it Gold because we have a Gold package with the highest speeds and a public IP address as the options. The Local Address is the IP used by the point-to-point protocol to assign to this end of the "wire". The remote

address is the address to be given to the clients so we want to use the pool we created in the IP Pools example on page 286, but in this case we might create a pool of public IP's. The only other setting really required is the "Change TCP MSS" to "yes". This is necessary to make many secure sites work properly in the client's web browser.

General Protocols	Limits		OK
Name: G	old		Cancel
Local Address: 10	0.0.0.9		Apply
Remote Address: po	ool1	₹ ▲	Comment
Bridge:		•	Сору
Incoming Filter:		•	Remove
Outgoing Filter:			
Address List:			
DNS Server:		\$	
WINS Server:			
- Change TCP MSS C default	C no G	r yes	

3. Since this is a client profile, we will create a speed limitation on the Limits tab. Since this is the Gold package, the limit will be 5M/5M meaning 5 Mbps upload and download.

New PPP Profile	
General Protocols Limits	ОК
Session Timeout:	Cancel
Idle Timeout:	Apply
Rate Limit (rx/tx): 5M/5M	Comment
- Only One	Сору
Introduction of the second	Remove
lefault	

4. Everything else is optional or geared toward a more complex setup so now click OK

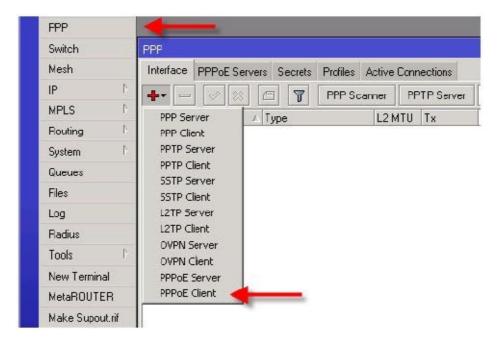
and the profile is completed. Back on the secrets tab, assign the profile to any client that buys the Gold package.

5. The profile is now completed and may be assigned to one or multiple clients in the secrets tab.

Example – Create a PPPoE Client

With the server configured, we need a client and RouterOS provides that as well. Remember that since RouterOS is standards based, any PPPoE client should work with a RouterOS PPPoE server. To create a PPPoE client:

1. In WinBox, click the PPP button and in the list select PPPoE Client.



2. The Name is optional, but you will need to select the Interface on the General tab. Remember, this is a Layer 2 protocol so it needs to know where to look for the server.

poe-out1 PoE Client 80			Cancel Apply Disable Comment Copy
80			Disable Comment
80			Comment
80			
			Сору
		`	
			Remove
ลกวี			Torch
		1	PPPoE Scan
	Transing	Tunning	T

3. On the Dial Out tab, you can select a service name to match the server's service name or leave blank for any service. Next, add the User and Password and you will likely want to Use Peer DNS so check that box as well.

Vew Interfa	ce	7			
General [Dial Out	Status Tra	affic		OK
Service:				-	Cancel
AC Name:				▼	Apply
User:	perawf	ord			Disable
Password:	******	******		▲	Comment
Profile:	default			Ŧ	Сору
	🗌 Dial	On Demand			Remove
		l Default Rout	e		Torch
	Use Use	Peer DNS 🤜		l	PPPoE Scan
- Allow			nana ing		5.92
🔽 pap			✔ chap		
💌 mscha	ap1		✓ mschap2		
nabled		running	slave	Statu	s:

4. Click ok, and the client should immediately negotiate a connection to the server.

PPTP and L2TP Tunnels

PPTP tunnels are likely the type of tunnel you want to configure if you want to "dial in" to your office network or home network. By configuring your MikroTik router as a PPTP server and connecting it directly to the Internet, you can create a PPTP client on a Windows, Mac OSX or RouterOS device. You can then dial the connection and once connected, your computer will have access to your home or office's resources as if it were behind your home or office firewall.

The same configuration can be done between two MikroTik routers with one configured as the PPTP server and one as a PPTP client. RouterOS supports several other tunnel types including L2TP. These tunnels are Layer 3 tunnels, meaning they need to have IP connectivity in place prior to initiating the tunnel, unlike PPPoE, which works at Layer 2, and then creates the Layer 3 connection.

Example – Create a PPTP or L2TP Server

Setting up the PPTP or L2TP server is very simple.

1. In WinBox, click the PPP button. On the interface tab, click the PPTP Server button.

2. Check the box to enable the server and select a profile. The profile is created exactly the same as for PPPoE as shown on page 288.

PPP			1		
Switch	PPP				
Mesh	Interface PPPoE Servers Secrets	Profiles Active Cor	nnections		
IP D		PPP Scanner P		SSTPS	Server
MPLS 🗅	Name / Type	L2 MTL		Rx	TxF
Routing	Tranic - Type	102 0110	/ 10	110	101
System 🗈	PPTP Server				
Queues	Ena	abled	ок		
Files	Max MTU: 1460		Cancel		
Log	Max MRU: 1460				
Radius	MBBU:	L	Apply		
Tools 🗈					
New Terminal	Keepalive Timeout: 30				
MetaROUTER	Default Profile: AP1				
Make Supout.rif	- Authentication				
Manual	Contract of the second s	:hap nschap2			
Exit	0 items out or 3	вопара			

3. PPTP will now accept incoming connections and issue the client an IP address according to the profile. Note that the same secrets database is used as PPPoE and is shown on page 291.

Adding Routes for Tunnels

If you are using a PPTP tunnel to join two networks on different subnets, you will need to add

routes to each router pointing to the other router's subnet. For example, for a PPTP client, the destination network will be the subnet at the far end of the tunnel and the gateway will be the IP address of the PPTP server contained in the server's PPTP profile as the Local IP. For the server end of the tunnel, the destination network will be the remote client's subnet and the gateway IP address will be the PPTP client's tunnel IP.

Tunnels With IP Addresses on Same Subnet as LAN Hosts

This is the remote end tunnel and the remote LAN is 192.168.1.0/24:

Address <1	0.10.10.2>	
Address:	10.10.10.2	ОК
Network:	10.10.10.1	Сору
Interface:	pptp-out2	Remove
dynamic		

This is the server end tunnel and the server LAN is 192.168.0.0/24:

Address <1	0.10.10.1>	
Address:	10.10.10.1	ОК
Network:	10.10.10.2	Сору
Interface:	<pptp-kbr1></pptp-kbr1>	Remove
dynamic		

On the remote end add this route:

Destination: 192.168.0.0/24 and Gateway: 10.10.10.1

On the Server end add this route:

Destination: 192.168.1.0/24 and Gateway: 10.10.10.2

This will allow the two LAN subnets to be able to reach one another through the tunnel.

Note that if you assign your PPTP clients IP addresses from the same subnet as your PPTP server's local area network, you will need to enable proxy-arp on the interface facing your local area network clients. Proxy-arp transmits the MAC of all connected hosts so that the PPTP server will ARP for the remote client, thereby enabling LAN hosts to communicate with it.

Configuring L2TP Server

To configure L2TP, follow the exact same steps as for the PPTP server, except perform the configuration using the L2TP button on the PPP Interface tab.

PPP	
Switch	PPP
Mesh	Interface PPPoE Servers Secrets Profiles Active Connections
IP Þ	+ - 🖉 😭 🍸 PPP Scanner PPTP Server SSTP Server L2TP Server
MPLS 🗅	Name 🛆 Type L2 MTU Tx Rx Tx Pac RxPac
Routing 🗅 🗅	
System 🗅	L2TP Server
Queues	CEnabled OK
Files	Max MTU: 1460
Log	Max MRU: 1460
Radius	MBRU:
Tools 🗅	
New Terminal	Default Profile: default-encryption 🔻
MetaROUTER	Authentication
Make Supout.rif	 ✓ pap ✓ chap ✓ mschap1 ✓ mschap2
Manual	
Exit	0 items out of 3

PPP Status Tab

The PPP Status tab shows the status of any clients that may be connected to the router's PPP services. The clients IP address, user name, and connection time is displayed for each client.

nte	erface PPPoE Servi	ers Sec	rets Profile	Active Conn	ections
=		Service	Encoding	Address	Uptime
	examplectient	pptp	cricourig	10.10.10.30	00:00:04

Bridging Tunnels

Thus far we have explored three tunnel types, PPPoE, PPTP and L2TP. All three are Layer 3 routed tunnels, but it is also possible to create tunnels that can be bridged. Bridged tunnels work just like any bridge, that is, packets that enter a bridge port are transmitted out the other bridge ports. Bridges join dissimilar interfaces into a single logical interface.

Two types of tunnels that can bridge networks are EoIP (Ethernet Over IP), and VPLS (Virtual Private LAN Service). EoIP is simpler to create but has increased overhead over VPLS.

Example – Create a Bridged EoIP Tunnel

1. In WinBox, click the Interfaces button and select a new EoIP tunnel interface. The only information that is mandatory is the Remote IP Address of the other end of the tunnel. If tunneling across the Internet, this will be the public IP address of the remote host. The tunnel ID must be unique for every tunnel on the router so use the default or change if adding multiples.

New Interface		
General Traffic		ОК
Nam	e: edip-tunnel1	Cancel
Тур	e: EoIP Tunnel	Apply
MT	U: 1500	Disable
L2 MT	: [:	Comment
MAC Addres	s: 02:A2:36:BC:C4:40	
AR	P: enabled	Ccpy Remove
Local Addres	·s:	
Remote Addres	s: 66.76.254.1	Toich
Tunnel I	D: 1	
Keepalive Interv	al:	•
nabled	Tunning	dave

2. Click OK.

3. Repeat the process on the remote end of the tunnel.

Once the tunnel is running, evidenced by the letter "R" next to the interface, you can bridge it to other physical interfaces. For example, if your LAN is on ether1 on both ends of the tunnel, create a new bridge interface by clicking the Bridge button and the plus sign.

FPP		Bridge							
Switch		Bridge Ports Fillers NAT Hosts							
Mesh		+ =			2	7	Settings		
IP	Þ		محصيل اد				Jetungs		
MPLS	1		ime Sbridge	1	△ Typ Brid			L2 MTU 65535	Tx 0 bps
Routing	1		bridge:		Brid			1526	
System	Ŀ								
Queues									

On the ports tab add ether1 and the EoIP tunnel you just created. Repeat on the remote end of the link and your two networks will be joined at Layer 2.

Brid	lge	Ports	Filters	N	AT Hosts				
+			88	1	7				
	Int	erface		1	Bridge	Priority (h	Path Cost	Horizon	Role
	1 11 15								designated port
	100.00	eoip-lu	nnel1		bridge2	80	10		designated port

Example – Create a Transparent VPLS Tunnel

The routing and MPLS packages are required to create a transparent VPLS tunnel. This example assumes you are connecting two hosts with a VPLS tunnel in order to bridge two wireless devices together without using EoIP or station-wds mode.

It is also assumed that you have an existing wireless connection between the two devices, that is, one device is in ap-bridge or bridge mode and the other device is in station mode and is associated with the access point. This can be done as demonstrated on page 238.

MPLS also requires Layer 3 connectivity between the two devices, so you will need an IP address on the wireless interface on the AP device and an IP address on the same subnet on the wireless interface on the station device. Adding IP addresses is covered on page 37. The two hosts should be able to ping each other.

In this example, we are assuming that the AP has an IP address of 10.0.0.1/24 on the wlan1 interface and that the station is associated wirelessly with the AP and has an IP address of 10.0.0.2/24 on its wlan1 interface.

Near End of Tunnel (AP)

1. In WinBox, begin by clicking the MPLS button. First you must turn LDP on by clicking the LDP Settings button and enabling LDP.

LDF	^o Interi	face	LDP	Neighbo	Acce	pt Filter	Adverti	ise Filte	Forward
+	-	-	×		7	MPLS S	ettings	LDP	Settings
	Inter	face		Hello	Interval	Hold T	ime T	ransport	Address
	ethe	1			00:00:0	5 00	00:15		

-	Enabled	OK
LSR ID:	· · · · ·	Cancel
Transport Address:		Apply
Path Vector Limit:	255	
Hop Limit:	255	
	Loop Detect	
	Use Explicit Null	
	Distribute For Default Route	

2. On the LDP tab click the plus sign. Select the interface on which we will create the tunnel, in this case wlan1 and the transport IP address which is the wlan1 IP of this router, 10.0.0.1 and click OK.

+ -	2	MPLS Settings LDP Sett	ings
Inter	face / Hello Inte	erval Hold Time Transport Add	dress Acce
	New MPLS Interface	8	
	Interface:	wlan1	OK
	Hello Interval:	00:00:05	Cancel
	Hold Time:	00:00:15	Apply
	Transport Address:	10.0.0.1	Disable
		 Accept Dynamic Neighbors 	Comment
			Сору
			Remove

3. In WinBox, click the MPLS button and select the VPLS submenu button and on the VPLS tab click the plus sign. Set the Remote Peer to the IP address of the remote end's wlan1 interface, in this example, 10.0.0.2. Set the VPLS ID to the default of 0:0 and click OK.

Interlaces		Intelface (vpls1>		
Wireless	-	General Status Tra	the	-
Bridge	MPLS	Status IIa	and the second	OK
PFP	VPLS	Name: y	pls1	Cancel
Switch	VPLS BGP VP	LS Type: V	PLS	Apply
Mesh	+	мти; 1	500	Disable
IP	hlama	L2 MTU: 1	500	
MPLS <	MFLS	MAC Address: 0	2 7A:07:08:7A:41	Commen
Routing	Traffic Eng	ABP: e	rabled	Сору
System		Anr. [6		Remove
Queues		Remote Peer: 1	0.0.0.1 🖛	Torch
Files		VPLS ID: 0	:0 🔶 🔺	TOION
Los				

4. Create a new bridge interface by clicking the Bridge button and the plus sign and OK.

Bridge		-								
FPP		Bridge	Bridge							
Switch	itch Bridge Ports		Filters NAT Hosts							
Mesh		+ -			2	7	Settings			
IP	Þ		1000				Jetungs	LOUTU	T	
MPLS	Þ		ame Noridgef	10	⊥ Typ Brid			L2 MTU 65535	Tx O bps	
Routing	1		bridge.		Brid			1526	24.8 kbps	
System	P									
Queues										

5. On the bridge ports tab, click the plus sign and add the LAN interface, in this case ether1. Click the plus sign again and add the vpls1 interface you just created and click OK.

}ridge								
Bridge	Ports	Filters	NAT	Hosts				
+ -	-	*	æ	7				
A In	terface		/ Brid	ge	Priority (h	Path Cost	Horizon	Role
1	tether1		brid	ge2	80	10		designated port
	t vp/s1		brid	~	80	10		disabled port

Far End of Tunnel (station)

1. In WinBox, begin by clicking the MPLS button. First you must turn LDP on by clicking the LDP Settings button and enabling LDP.

LDP Interface	LDPN	eighbor	Accep	t Filter	Adve	rtise F	ilte	Forward
+ - +	×		7 1	IPLS S	ettings	L	DP	Settings
Interface	1	Hello In	terval	Hold T	ime	Trans	port	Address
ether1		0	0:00:05	00:	00:15			

	Enabled	ОК
LSR ID:	▼	Cancel
Transport Address:		Apply
Path Vector Limit:	255	1
Hop Limit:	255	
	Loop Detect	
	🔲 Use Explicit Null	
	Distribute For Default Route	

2. On the LDP tab click the plus sign. Select the interface on which we will create the tunnel, in this case ether1 and the transport IP address which is the public IP of this router, 10.0.0.2 and click OK.

LDP Interf	and reaganeer	Accept Filter Advertise Filter Fo	rwarding Table
+ -		and the second sec	ngs
hterf	ace / Hello Inte	erval Hold Time Transport Add	fress Accept
	New MPLS Interface		
	Interface:	wlan1	ОК
	Hello Interval:	00:00:05	Cancel
	Hold Time:	00:00:15	Apply
	Transport Address:	10.0.0.2	Disable
		Accept Dynamic Neighbors	Comment
			Сору
			Remove
	enabled		

3. In WinBox, click the VPLS button and on the VPLS tab click the plus sign. Set the Remote Peer to the IP address of the remote end's public interface, in this example 10.0.0.1. Set the VPLS ID to the default of 0:0 and click OK.

Interfaces		Interface (vpls1)	
Wreless		- General Status Traffic	ОК
Bridge	MPLS		
PPP	VPLS	Name: vpls1	Cancel
Switch	VPLS BGPVPL	S Type: VPLS	Apply
Mesh	+	MTU: 1500	Disable
IP	P Nama	L2MTU: 1500	Comment
MPLS	MPLS	MAC Address: 02:7A:07:CB:7A:41	
Routing	Traific Eng		Copy
System	M VPLS	Anr. Ienauleo	Remove
Queues		Remote Peer: 10.0.0.1	Torch
Files		VPLS ID: 0:0	▲ 1001
Log			

4. Create a new bridge interface by clicking the Bridge button and the plus sign and OK.

Bridge		-							
FPP		Bridge							
Switch		Bridge	Ports Filte	ers NA	T Hos	ts			
Mesh		+ -			7	Settings	1		
IP	1					Jettings	l	-	
MPLS	↑		ame \$bridge1		ype ridge		L2 MTU 65535	Tx 0 bps	
Routing	Þ		tbridge2		ridge		1526		
System	P								
Queues									

5. On the bridge ports tab, click the plus sign and add the LAN interface, in this case, ether1. Click the plus sign again and add the vpls1 interface you just created and click OK.

ridge								
Bridge	Ports	Filters	NAT	Hosts				
+ -	-	88	2	7				
ln	Interface /		A Brid	ige	Priority (h	Path Cost	Horizon	Role
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	t⊈tether1			lge2	80	10		designated port
I	tt vp/s7			lge2	80	10		disabled port

The two LANS are now bridged using VPLS. To confirm that LDP is running, click the MPLS button and then the LDP Neighbor tab. You should see the other end of the tunnel displayed. To confirm that the VPLS tunnel is running, click the Interfaces button, double click the new VPLS interface, and check the status tab. You should see a display of the tunnel details.

For Further Study: MPLS and VPLS are powerful protocols that can do far more than bridge a wireless link. They are a main topic in the MTCINE or MikroTik Certified Internetworking Engineer certification course and can greatly expand your networks' capabilities.

Chapter 18 - Conclusion

I hope that you have enjoyed this book and have learned the concepts presented through my examples. RouterOS is a powerful routing system with many configurable options and capabilities. Fully learning it requires both book knowledge and hands on experience. Through study, practice, trial and error, you will learn to master this powerful tool.

After some time and experience using the basics presented in this book, you should challenge yourself by obtaining a MikroTik Certified Network Associate certificate. When you are comfortable with all of the concepts learned in the MTCNA course, you should obtain one or more advanced certifications to further explore this powerful operating system.

Writing a technical book with many similar sounding acronyms is a real challenge. With protocols like PPP, PPTP, PPPoE, L2TP and the like, it is easy to make a mistake no matter how many times your work is proof read. For this reason, I invite you to email any errors you may find to info@learnmikrotik.com. I welcome your corrections and suggestions and will incorporate them as well as any updates in future printings. These corrections and updates can also be found at http://learnmikrotik.com/book/corrections. You may also sign up for email notifications of updates at the same web site.

Thank you for reading my book and I hope to see you in one of my classes soon!

Steve Discher http://www.LearnMikroTik.com

References

1. © MikroTik, <u>www.mikrotik.com</u>. All rights reserved. Reprinted with permission as used for training.

2. E.W. Dijkstra. "A Note on Two Problems in Connection with Graphs." *Numerische Mathematic* 1:269-271, 1959.

3. Stephen A. Thomas. "IP Switching and Routing Essentials." *Wiley Computer Publishing* 103, 2002.

4. "Traceroute." *Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia*. Wikimedia Foundation, Inc. Web, 22 September 2011.

Appendix 1

Official MikroTik Certified Network Associate Training Syllabus

MTCNA training outline

last edited on April 12, 2011

Course prerequisites – TCP/IP basics

Title	Objective
Module 1	 MikroTik RouterOS and RouterBOARD;
MikroTik RouterOS	 First time accessing the router + LAB;
Introduction	 Winbox and MAC-Winbox;
	 Null Modern cable;
	 SSH and Telnet;
	 Setup Internet connection via router + LAB;
	 IP address and default gateway;
	DHCP-client;
	 NAT masquerade;
	TCP/IP Basics;
	 OSI layers and encapsulation;
	 Communication between two network devices;
	IP addresses;
	 Networks Masks and Subnets;
	 Upgrade RouterOS + LAB;
	get packages;
	upgrade ways;
	type of packages;
	Manage RouterOS logins + LAB;
	Manage RouterOS services; Radeus and exact/impact configuration + LAP;
	 Backup and export/import configuration + LAB; save and reload backup; add auroat file;
	edit export file; BouterOS license;
	 levels; update license + LAB;
	NTP client configuration:
	Netinstall + LAB:
	reinstall RouterOS:
	reset BouterOS
	- 10301 110010100

Title	Objective
Module 2 MikroTik RouterOS Firewall	 Firewall principles; structure; chains and actions + LAB; Firewall Filter in action; filter actions; filter chains; protecting your router (input) + LAB; protection your customers (forward) + LAB; RouterOS connection tracking; impact on router; connection state + LAB; Basic Address-List + LAB; Source NAT; actions + LAB; Destination NAT; actions; DNS cache + LAB;
Module 3 MikroTik RouterOS QoS	 Simple Queue + LAB; target-address; max-limit and limit-at; dst-address; bursts; Traffic Prioritization + LAB; Simple Mangle and Tree Queue + LAB; mark-connection and mark-packet; queue tree; PCQ setup + LAB; pcq-rate configuration; pcq-limit configuration; bandwidth Test + LAB; client; server; Monitoring; interface traffic monitor; Torch; graphs + LAB; SNMP;

Title	Objective
Title Module 4 Mikrotik RouterOS Network Manage- ment	Objective ARP + LAB; ARP modes; RouterOS ARP table; DHCP server and client + LAB; DHCP client; server setup; leases management; DHCP-server network configuration; HotSpot + LAB; setup; users; walled-garden; ip-binding; user profiles; server profiles; server profiles; setup; transparent proxy; HTTP firewal; HTTP firewal; HTTP logging; Store; format additional disks; move services to store; RouterOS tools; E-mail;
	 Netwatch + LAB; Ping, Traceroute; Profile (CPU load);

Title	Objective
Module 5 MikroTik RouterOS Wireless	 802.11a/b/g/n Concepts; Bands; Frequencies; Channels; Country regulation; Setup simple wireless link + LAB; Access Point configuration; Station configuration; Station configuration; Access Point configuration; Station configuration; MAC-address filtering + LAB; default-authentication; access-list; connect-list; default-forwarding; Wireless Security and Encryption + LAB; WPA-PSK; WPA2-PSK; 802.11n specific settings + LAB; data-rates; HT guard interval; MikroTik wireless protocols + LAB; Nstreme usage and configuration; Nstreme Dual configuration; NV2 (TDMA) configuration; Wireless scan; Snooper; Registration table;
Module 6 MikroTik RouterOS Bridging	 Bridging concepts + LAB; bridge overview; create bridge; add ports to bridge; Bridge wireless networks + LAB; WDS modes; station-pseudobridge; Bridge Wieless and remote networks + LAB; EoIP tunnel; VPLS tunnel;

Title	Objective
Module 7 MikroTik RouterOS Routing	 Routing overview; routing concepts; route table; routes abbreviation; create routes; Static routing; set default gateway + LAB; manage dynamic routes; implement static routing on simple network + LAB; OSPF + LAB; enable OSPF; implement single-area OSPF;
Module 8 MikroTik RouterOS Tunnels	 Secure local network; point-to-point addresses; create PPPoE client on RouterOS/Windows/MacOS + LAB; PPPoE service-name; create PPPoE server + LAB; PPP settings; ppp secret + LAB; ppp profile + LAB; ppp profile + LAB; ppp status; IP pool; create pool; manage ranges; assign to service; Secure remote networks communication + LAB; create PPTP(L2TP) client; create PPTP(L2TP) server; setup routes between networks;

Table of Figures

- <u>Figure 1 IP Firewall Input Chain </u>¹
- <u>Figure 2 Connections 1</u>
- <u>Figure 3 Source NAT ¹</u>
- <u>Figure 4 Packet Flow Diagram¹</u>
- Figure 5 Conn Track On/Off¹
- <u>Figure 6 PCQ Behavior ¹</u>
- <u>Figure 7 PCQ Behavior</u>¹
- Figure 8 Bandwidth Test Layout.
- Figure 9 802.11 b/g Channels, 2.4 GHz¹
- Figure 10 5.8 GHz Channels
- <u>Figure 11 Application Matrix by Protocol</u> $\frac{1}{2}$
- Figure 12 Routing Diagram
- Figure 13 Routing Diagram
- Figure 14 OSPF Network
- Figure 15 Point to Point Addressing
- Figure 16 PPPoE Network

Index

802.11	
802.11a	
802.11b	
802.11g	
802.11n	
Access List	
Access Lists	
Add an IP Address	
Adding a Package	
Address Lists	
Areas	
ARP	

B

8

A

Backups Bandwidth Test Utility Basic Firewall Blocking Certain Sites boot loader Bridged Bridging Bridging a Link Bridging an access point

Burst

С

channel width

Channelization

Clock

Connect Lists

Connection Tracking

Connections

Custom Login Page

D

Ε

Destination NAT

Destination NAT with Action Redirect

Destination NAT with the Action Redirect

DHCP

DHCP Client

DHCP Server

Disable Connection Tracking

DNS

Downgrading

Dynamic Routes

Firewalls

Forgotten Password

Forward Chain

Hiding the SSID

Hotspot

Http Firewall

Ι

Importing a Text Backup

input chain

Install a License

Interfaces

interference

IP Bindings

IP Pools

L

L2TP

License Level

license levels

Licensing

Link State Protocol

Local Area Networks

Logging to a Remote Syslog Server

Logging Web Traffic

Η

MAC Filtering

Masquerade

Monitoring Tools

Most Specific Route

Ν

0

Ρ

NAT, Network Address Translation

NetInstall

Netwatch

NTP

NTP Client

NTP Server

NV2

One Limit to All

Optimum Mangle

OSPF

Package Management

PCQ – Per Connection Queuing

Ping

Point to Point Addressing

Point to Point Links

PPP Profiles

PPP Status

PPPoE Client

PPPoE Server

PPTP

Profile

Proprietary Protocols

Pseudobridge

Queue Priority for VOIP Traffic

R

Q

S

Redirect

Restoring a Binary Backup

Route Distance

Routed

Router Identity

Routing

Routing Flags

Secret

Serial Terminal

Server Profiles

Service Ports

Simple Queue

Simple Queues

Small Channels

SNMP

Source NAT
Source NAT to Source Traffic From a Certain IP Address,
Source NAT With Multiple Public IP Addresses
Static ARP
Static Leases
Static Routes
Station - pseudobridge - clone
Storage
Stores
System Identity
System Time
Т
Text Export
Tools
Traceroute
Traffic Graphing
Traffic Prioritization
Transparent Web Proxy
U
Upgrading
Upgrading using FTP
User and Group Assignments
User Management
User Profiles
UserManager

Virtual AP

VOIP

VPLS,

VPN Tunnels

W

Walled Garden
WDS
Web Proxy
WEP
WinBox
Wireless
Wireless Distribution System
Wireless Security
Wireless Theory
WPA
WPA2